

Introduction

IA. Vocabulary

• Likes and dislikes

I. Complete the sentences with the words below.

don't fancy let's prefer really shall sounds
want

1. Do you _____ doing something on Saturday?
2. Why _____ we go out?
3. I'm _____ not into heavy metal.
4. OK, then. _____ go and see that band.
5. _____ we invite Jack and Mary?
6. I'd _____ to go just with you, really.
7. And what do you _____ to do after the concert?
8. OK, then. _____ good.

II. Put the lines of the dialogue in the correct order.

- _____ a. I like playing chess. How about you?
- _____ b. Me too. Do you fancy a game this weekend?
- _____ c. Let's meet in the park at midday.
- _____ d. What do you like doing in your free time?
- _____ e. Yes. That sounds good. What time?
- _____ f. Really? I don't really like chess, but I quite like badminton.

• Describing people

III. Complete the sentences with the items given below.

glasses hat earrings ring
socks belt scarf sunglasses

1. You wear this round your neck when it's cold. _____
2. You wear this on your head. _____
3. You wear these on your feet. _____
4. You wear this with jeans or trousers. _____
5. You wear these to help you see. _____
6. You wear this on your finger. _____
7. You wear these on your ears. _____
8. You wear these when it's sunny. _____

IV. Look at the picture of *Dylan, Marissa, Justin* and *Sheila*. Write the names of the clothes they are wearing from number 1 to number 16. Numbers 2 and 14 have been done for you as examples. Then write descriptions of their clothes.



shorts top sandals shoes
jacket dress socks skirt
tie belt boots suit
trainers trousers shirt T-shirt

Dylan:

1. _____ 2. a suit 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

Marissa:

6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

Justin:

9. _____ 10. _____ 11. _____ 12. _____

Sheila:

13. _____ 14. a top 15. _____ 16. _____

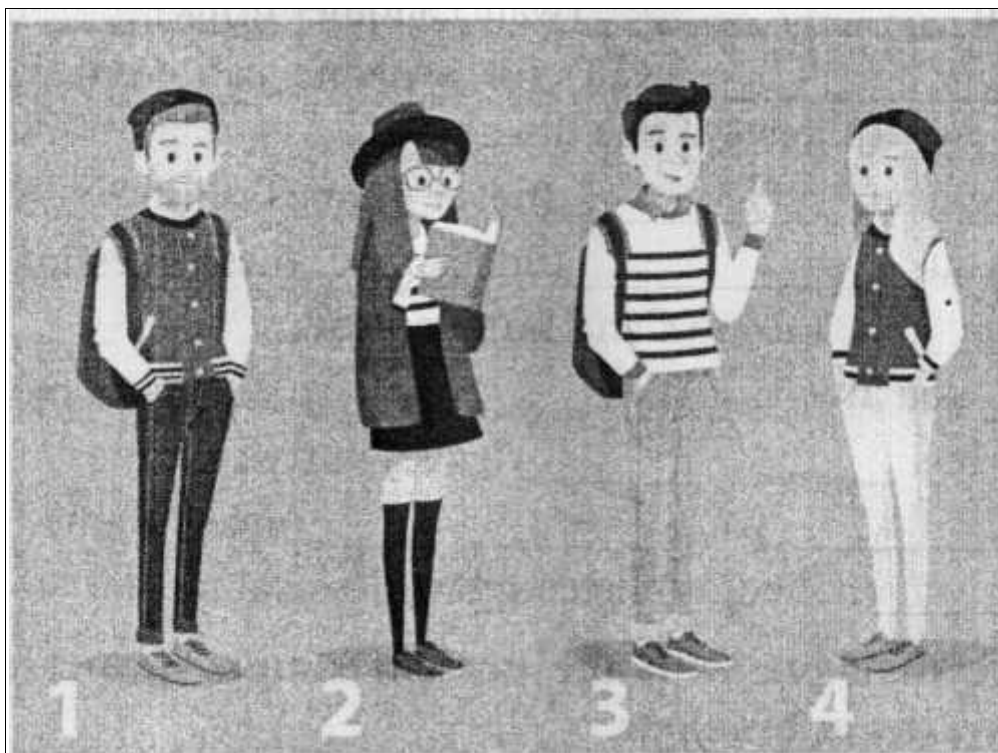
Dylan

Marissa

Justin

Sheila

V. Write short descriptions of the people. Describe their hair and clothes using the prompts below.



- hair: dark, blonde, short, long, straight, wavy
- special features: moustache, beard
- clothes: shirt, polo shirt, T-shirt, cardigan, jacket, trousers, jeans, skirt, cap, hat, shoes
- accessories: backpack, book

1. Mark's got
2. Jane's got
3. Phong's got
4. Anna's got

IB. Grammar

- **Contrast: present simple and present continuous**

I. Choose the correct answers.

1. This car **is belonging** / **belongs** to the head teacher.
2. **Are you needing** / **Do you need** any help with that?
3. He **isn't understanding** / **doesn't understand** the questions.
4. I **am studying** / **study** really hard at the moment.
5. Why **are you waiting** / **do you wait** here?

II. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. He never _____ (go) to parties.
2. _____ you _____ (want) another drink?
3. She _____ (wait) for a phone call from Jack. He usually _____ (phone) at this time.
4. 'Why _____ you _____ (never wear) T-shirts?' - 'No real reason.'
5. '_____ you _____ (understand) these questions?' - 'I don't.'
6. We _____ (go) to Can Tho tomorrow.
7. _____ you always _____ (go out) for a meal on Sundays?
8. Hurry up! The bus _____ (leave) in five minutes.
9. What time _____ you _____ (meet) Nam?
10. I _____ (not enjoy) listening to classical music.

III. Complete the dialogue with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

Lan Hello.¹ _____ (you / enjoy) the music?
Nick Not really. I ² _____ (prefer) hip hop. This band is terrible.
Lan It's my dad's band.
Nick Oh, sorry. Actually, they ³ _____ (not play) badly now. Lots of people ⁴ _____ (dance). Which one is your dad?
Lan He ⁵ _____ (play) the guitar.
Nick He's great. Anyway, I ⁶ _____ (not know) your name.
Lan I'm Lan.
Nick I'm Nick. Please to meet you.
Lan Hey. I ⁷ _____ (like) your polo shirt. It's cool.
Nick Really?
Lan Yes. ⁸ _____ (you / wear) it often?
Nick Yes, I ⁹ _____ (wear) it most weekends. Actually, ¹⁰ _____ (you / do) anything next weekend?
Lan Yes, I ¹¹ _____ (visit) my grandparents in the suburb.
Nick Oh, right.

IV. Complete the dialogue with the verbs below. Use the present simple or present continuous.

<i>do</i>	<i>come</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>stay</i>
<i>study</i>	<i>want</i>	<i>work</i>	<i>not work</i>	

Nick Hi, I'm Nick.
Mai Hi, I'm Mai. Where ¹ _____ you _____ from, Nick?
Nick England. I ² _____ with a family here in Ho Chi Minh City.
Mai ³ _____ you _____ it here?
Nick Yes, it's a nice city. I ⁴ _____ a great time.
Mai Can you speak Vietnamese?
Nick Yes. I ⁵ _____ at a language school. What ⁶ _____ you _____, Mai?
Mai I'm a nurse.
Nick That's interesting.
Mai I usually ⁷ _____ at night, but I ⁸ _____ this evening.
Nick ⁹ _____ you _____ to have a drink?
Mai OK.

V. Decide whether the present continuous is being used (a) for something that is happening now or (b) for an arrangement in the future. Write a or b.

- What are you wearing to Mai's birthday party? _____
- What's that music you're listening to? _____
- My aunt is coming to see us this afternoon. _____
- I can't meet you on Saturday. I'm playing football. _____
- Is Ann coming to the cinema with us this evening? _____
- 'Where's Susan?' - 'She's reading upstairs.' _____
- Lan is wearing a pink skirt. _____
- 'Are you planning to stay at home this weekend?' - 'No, we're visiting our grandparents in the suburb.' _____
- What are you doing tomorrow night? _____
- It's starting to rain. _____

VI. Complete the pairs of sentences with the present simple or the present continuous form of the verb in brackets.

- a She always _____ (wear) a white dress for work.

b I _____ (wear) new shoes. Do you like them?

2. **a** We _____ (go) hiking next month.
 b They _____ (go) hiking every summer.
3. **a** I _____ (love) this music. What is it?
 b I _____ (enjoy) this music. What is it?
4. **a** Light _____ (travel) faster than sound.
 b That car _____ (travel) very fast. Be careful.
5. **a** My brother often _____ (sing) in the shower.
 b My friend, Peter, _____ (sing). What a terrible noise!
6. **a** I _____ (not believe) him. It's a lie.
 b He _____ (not tell) the truth. It's a lie.

VII. Make questions from these words, using the correct verb tense.

1. Which book / you read I at the moment?

2. When / you leave/ tomorrow?

3. Which coffee / you prefer / Italian / French?

4. What / you usually have / for breakfast?

5. What / your father / do now?

• **Articles**

VIII. Choose the correct answers.

1. I love **Indian food / the Indian food**.
2. **Life / The life** in a small village can be very boring.
3. **Weather / The weather** in Scotland was terrible last weekend.
4. This crossing isn't for **bicycles / the bicycles**. It's for **pedestrians / the pedestrians**.
5. **Fields / The fields** around the village are full of cows.
6. I hate **advertisements / the advertisements**. They're usually so boring.

IX. Complete the sentences with the correct article: a/an, the or zero article (Ø).

1. I don't read _____ books about magic.
2. He's reading _____ new Harry Potter book.
3. Polar bears don't mind _____ cold weather.
4. I'm not enjoying _____ cold weather this winter.
5. _____ tigers live in Asia.
6. I don't like _____ Mondays.
7. I don't like _____ heavy metal music.
8. I never wear _____ jeans.
9. I'll see you at _____ weekend.
10. I really like _____ Eyed Peas DVD.

X. Complete the sentences with the correct article: a, the or zero article (Ø).

1. There's _____ nice restaurant near our house.
2. We saw _____ President when he visited our city.
3. I want to be _____ doctor when I grow up.
4. The people in _____ village shop aren't very friendly.
5. 'Where's Nick?' - 'He's in _____ garden.'
6. My sister doesn't like _____ dogs - she prefers cats.
7. There's a red car and a blue car in the car park. Ours is _____ blue car.

XI. Complete the sentences with a or the.

1. I met _____ girl and _____ boy at the party. _____ girl was from France, and _____ boy was from Spain.
2. She lives in _____ flat in the centre of town. _____ flat is very small.
3. There's _____ bus at 10 or _____ train at 11. _____ bus arrives at 12, and _____ train arrives at 11.30.
4. My dad's got _____ Honda, and my mum's got _____ Suzuki. _____ Honda is much better than _____ Suzuki.
5. There was _____ cinema and _____ theatre in our town, but _____ cinema closed last year.
6. 'I'd like _____ pizza and _____ piece of chocolate cake.' - 'Would you like chips with _____ pizza?'
7. I bought _____ Beyonce DVD and _____ Grande DVD. _____ Beyonce was OK, but I didn't like _____ Grande album.

XII. Complete each pair of sentences with *a* or *the*.

1. **a** Dad is watching TV in _____ living room.
 b I'd like a house with _____ big living room.
2. **a** Look. There's _____ cat on that tree.
 b 'Which cat is yours?' - '_____ black one.'
3. **a** Linda's _____ lovely girl.
 b Who's _____ girl with long dark hair?
4. **a** I like this song. Who's _____ singer?
 b I think Beyonce is _____ great singer.
5. **a** There's _____ clothes shop near the post office.
 b I love _____ clothes shop between the bank and the chemist's.
6. **a** Shut _____ door, please.
 b My bedroom has got _____ blue door.

XIII. Add *the* to the sentences.

1. Moon came out from behind the clouds.

2. Paris is capital of France.

3. It's too cold to swim in sea.

4. I saw President on TV last night.

5. My brother wants to join army.

6. I'd like to travel around world.

7. It was cold but sun was shining.

8. If you see an accident, you should phone police.

XIV. Choose the correct answer.

1. My favourite sport is **football / the football**.
2. She loves **milk / the milk**.
3. I hate **cold coffee / the cold coffee**.
4. 'Where's **coffee / the coffee**?' - 'It's in the cupboard.'
5. We went swimming in the sea. **Water / The water** was really warm.
6. I'm going to take **dogs / the dogs** for a walk.

7. I'm not very interested in **fashion / the fashion**.
8. Where are **CDs / the CDs** that I bought yesterday?

UNIT 1: FEELINGS

1A. Vocabulary

• Adjectives to describe feelings

I. For each photo, choose the adjective (a-c) that matches how the person is feeling.



- | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. a bored | 2. a delighted | 3. a cross | 4. a relieved |
| b surprised | b embarrassed | b confused | b envious |
| c envious | c anxious | c excited | c shocked |

II. Choose the correct words.

1. Tom watched TV all day. He felt **confused / bored**.
2. Linda made her little sister cry. She felt **guilty / homesick**.
3. Jack passed all his exams. He felt **upset / relieved**.
4. We waited for ages. We felt **fed up / pleased**.
5. Mia went to school wearing different shoes. She felt **delighted / embarrassed**.

III. Match the descriptions with the suitable adjectives below.

bored sad surprised disappointed happy
thrilled tired

1. People feel like this when they hear good news. _____
2. Some students feel like this when they fail the examinations. _____
3. People feel like this when nothing interesting is happening. _____
4. People feel like this after a day of hard working. _____
5. Some people feel like this when they see old friends again after many years. _____
6. Some people feel like this when it rains hard in the dry season. _____
7. People feel like this when they hear bad news. _____

IV. Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

1. There's nothing to do here except lie on the beach. I'm really _____.
a. confused b. bored
2. She spends a lot of time on her own. I think she's very _____.
a. excited b. lonely
3. I didn't know anyone at the party, so I felt a little _____.
a. uncomfortable b. amazed
4. I've got an interview for a new job tomorrow and I'm really _____.
a. nervous b. bored

5. Everybody is telling me to do different things. I'm really _____.
 a. lonely b. confused
6. Phong's not answering his phone. I'm _____ that something has happened to him.
 a. confused b. worried

V. Choose the best adjective to describe each person's feelings.

1. I didn't get an invitation to the party. Everyone else did.
 a. upset b. relieved c. bored
2. My dad decided to sing at my birthday party, but he's a terrible singer.
 a. scared b. embarrassed c. depressed
3. My close friend left me and made friends with others.
 a. jealous b. amused c. excited
4. It was a difficult and important exam, and I passed it.
 a. confused b. relieved c. exciting
5. I was away from home and I missed my family.
 a. bored b. nervous c. homesick
6. The shop assistant was very rude to me.
 a. shocked b. scared c. pleased
7. We lost the match - the other team scored in the last minute.
 a. nervous b. confused c. disappointed
8. I forgot to give my brother a message, and he missed his friend's party.
 a. jealous b. guilty c. delighted

VI. Match the feelings a-h with the sentences 1-8.

- a. I was jealous.
 b. I was very proud.
 c. I was really nervous.
 d. I felt quite ashamed.
 e. I was very irritated.
 f. I was delighted.
 g. I was very shocked.
 h. I was depressed.
1. My brother used my MP3 player and broke it. _____
2. My friends were bullying me and I felt sad and lonely. _____
3. I was rude to my mother yesterday. _____
4. I had my end-of-term exam last week. _____
5. My friend got a better present than me. _____
6. That car nearly ran over me! _____
7. My parents gave me a tablet for my birthday. _____
8. My teacher said my essay was the best in class. _____

VII. Complete the sentences with an adjective beginning with the initial letter.

1. I was d _____ when I got my results. I passed, but I thought I'd do better.
2. I was u _____ when my dad shouted at me.
3. Paula was j _____ because her parents gave her sister a bigger present.
4. I felt r _____ to find my wallet in the cafe where I had left it.
5. He's an a _____ man. He makes me laugh.
6. David missed his family and his friends. He felt really h _____.
7. The children were a _____ that they had behaved so badly.
8. Brian looks very e _____. Has he done something wrong?
9. We were very s _____ when we saw the accident.

VIII. Complete the sentences with the below.

relieved bored suspicious confused

ashamed anxious envious upset
delighted frightened cross embarrassed

1. Mum will be _____ when she finds out about the broken vase.
2. We had a(n) _____ couple of weeks waiting for the test results.
3. All the roads looked the same and he felt thoroughly _____.
4. Andrea was _____ at the chance to go to the Bolshoi ballet.
5. Michelle was very _____ at having to ask her parents for money.
6. The police were _____ of Rob because his story did not quite make sense.
7. Susan was _____ to learn that her mother's illness was not a serious one.
8. Everyone cries sometimes - it's nothing to be _____ of.
9. She's still deeply _____ about her uncle's death.
10. I was _____ of being left by myself in the house when I was very young.
11. I see people who have opportunities I don't have, and I get _____.
12. Julia soon got _____ with lying on the beach, and then she took a swim in the sea.

IX. Fill in each blank with the correct adjective.

embarrassed excited surprised relaxed afraid
interested worried bored angry nervous

I was ¹ _____ before the meeting because there are often problems. But most people were calm and ² _____. Tom was ³ _____ because we didn't ask for his opinion. Linda felt ⁴ _____ because people laughed at her idea. Andy was ⁵ _____ and played with his phone. And Kevin said he wants to play the guitar but he's ⁶ _____ because he's ⁷ _____ to make mistakes. But we're ⁸ _____ and can't wait for the party. The teacher's ⁹ _____ too. She's ¹⁰ _____ because we organised everything with no help.

• **Accidents and injuries**

X. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. It's really hard to write because my wrist really **burns / cuts / hurts**.
2. Paul **broke / slipped / injured** over on the ice yesterday and injured his leg.
3. Phong **fell / injured / sprained** his arm at the weekend, so he can't come to school today.
4. The knife is very sharp. Be careful or you'll **burn / cut / break** yourself.
5. Look at this! I cut myself and **broke / burned / bled** all over my sleeves.
6. I can't walk very fast because I **broke / cut / sprained** my ankle yesterday.
7. That cable is very dangerous. Someone might **trip / hurt / sprain** over it.
8. That kettle is very hot - be careful! Don't **burn / slip / break** yourself.
9. I have a few **blood / bruises / falls** and my arm hurts, but nothing serious.
10. I've a **pain / burn / sprain** in my back and I need to lie down.

XI. Complete the sentences with the words below.

bumped survived injured scratched
broke twisted rescued escaped

1. Sue _____ her ankle and now it's very swollen.
2. Nam fell out of a tree and _____ his arm.
3. Only two people _____ the plane crash.
4. The tree crashed to the ground and _____ a man walking a dog.
5. The man jumped into the pool and _____ the drowning girl.
6. Luckily, the family _____ from the fire.
7. Tom _____ his leg on some of rose bushes.
8. Ken _____ his head on a branch.

• **Vocabulary Builder: Noun formation**

XII. Complete the sentences with the noun form of the words in brackets.

1. My friend's _____ was due to the death of her grandfather, (sad)

2. I get _____ out of dancing, (**enjoy**)
3. The man hid his face to cover his _____. (**embarrass**)
4. Robert accepted the offer without _____. (**hesitate**)
5. The athlete wore his medal with _____. (**proud**)
6. There seems to be some _____ over the exam dates, (**confuse**)
7. Some youths commit acts of vandalism out of _____. (**bored**)
8. They thanked Ann for her _____. (**kind**)

1B. Grammar

• Past simple (affirmative)

I. Complete the sentences with the negative form of the verbs.

Example: He won a silver medal, but he **didn't win** a gold medal.

1. I was happy when Wayne Rooney scored a goal, but I _____ happy when the referee sent him off.
2. She saw the London Marathon, but she _____ the New York Marathon.
3. My brother learned to ride a bike but he _____ to swim.
4. We played volleyball last night. We _____ basketball.
5. She competed in the London Olympics but she _____ in the Rio Olympics.
6. I watched the final match of the World Cup 2022, but I _____ the final in 2018.

II. Complete the sentences with the past simple affirmative form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I _____ (prefer) going to primary school.
2. They _____ (enjoy) watching the match last night.
3. You _____ (teach) me how to play chess. Thank you.
4. We _____ (leave) home in the morning.
5. I _____ (like) that film.
6. Our team _____ (score) a goal in the first half.
7. My sister _____ (win) the tournament.
8. I _____ (know) all the answers to the quiz.

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

It was my birthday yesterday. I ¹ _____ (want) to do something different, so my friends and I ² _____ (go) karting. We decided to have a race. I ³ _____ (start) really fast, but I ⁴ _____ (not win). In fact, I ⁵ _____ (come) last. I ⁶ _____ (not be) upset because I ⁷ _____ (have) such a good time! Afterwards, my dad ⁸ _____ (take) us to Mario's Pizzeria. The chef ⁹ _____ (make) a special pizza for me. I really ¹⁰ _____ (enjoy) my birthday!

• Past simple (negative and interrogative)

IV. Complete the dialogue with past simple questions and short answers.

- Mai** What¹ _____ (you / do) last night?
Mia I went to the cinema.
Mai What² _____ (you / see)?
Mia The new Angelia Jolie film.
Mai ³ _____ (you / enjoy) it?
Mia Yes, ⁴ _____. It was great.
Mai ⁵ _____ (your sister / go) with you?
Mia No, ⁶ _____.

V. Write true sentences about what you did last weekend. Use the past simple, affirmative or negative, and the phrases below.

go to the cinema buy a DVD have an argument with my parents
 meet my friends read a book drink coffee at breakfast

1. I went / didn't go to the cinema.

2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

VI. Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then write true answers.

1. last / what / you / did / night / do / ?

2. last / you / what / do / did / Sunday / ?

3. do / on your last birthday / did / what / you / ?

4. you / how many hours / last night / did / sleep / ?

5. did / last summer / where / go / you / on holiday / ?

1C. Word Skills

• -ed / -ing adjectives

I. Choose the correct adjectives.

1. I worked hard last term, but my exam results were **disappointed** / **disappointing**.
2. It was an **exhausted** / **exhausting** tennis match, but he won in the end.
3. I'll be **surprised** / **surprising** if Viet Nam win the World Cup.
4. I don't like this film. It's **bored** / **boring**.
5. This TV programme is very **interested** / **interesting**.
6. I forgot her name. It was really **embarrassed** / **embarrassing**.
7. I'm really **annoyed** / **annoying** because I can't find my mobile phone.
8. I love parties. They're really **excited** / **exciting**.
9. We really enjoyed the film. It was very **entertained** / **entertaining**.
10. Mai had studied hard for her exams and her results were very **satisfied** / **satisfying**.
11. The children were **fascinated** / **fascinating** by the clown's performance.
12. This weather is very **depressed** / **depressing**. It really gets me down.

II. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. Which film did you find more _____, *Alien* or *Saw*? (frighten)
2. 'What's wrong? You look _____. ' - 'I think I've lost my laptop.' (worry)
3. The film we saw wasn't very _____. My sister actually fell asleep, (excite)
4. The directions she had given us were _____, so we got lost, (confuse)
5. Did he really say you were ugly? I'm _____! (shock)

III. Complete the sentences with the -ed or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.

1. She's very _____ (please) with her new laptop.
2. He was very _____ (disappoint) when his best friend didn't give him a birthday present.
3. The weather's really _____ (depress). It's raining today and it rained yesterday, too.
4. That film is really _____ (amuse). I laughed all the way through it.
5. It's Sunday afternoon and Sue's got nothing to do. She's really _____ (bore).
6. That maths question was really _____ (confuse).
7. He's _____ (delight). He passed his driving test this morning.
8. They're going to watch their favourite group at a concert tonight. They're very _____ (excite).

IV. Read the leaflet and choose the correct adjectives.

X Games Superstars

The X Games take place every year in the USA. Skateboarding, snowboarding, and motorcross are among the many ¹**amazed** / **amazing** sports that people watch at the X Games. Over 100,000 spectators attend the games. They are ²**excited** / **exciting** by the bravery and ability of extreme sports stars. But who are the superstars of extreme sports? Here are our top five.

1. Tony Hawk

Although he performed some of the most ³**surprised** / **surprising** skateboard stunts in history and won the X Games gold medal nine times, he never seemed to feel ⁴**frightened** / **frightening**.

2. Shaun White

He had a heart operation when he was a child, but he grew up to be an Olympic Gold medalist in the ⁵**excited** / **exciting** snowboarding.

3. Jolene Van Vogt

At the age of eleven, she persuaded her dad to buy her a motorbike. At first, people were **Surprised** / **surprising** to see a young girl on a bike, but now she is a top motocross rider.

4. Dave Mirra

BMX rider Dave Mirra has won an ⁷**amazed** / **amazing** 24 medals at the X Games. He often performs very ⁸**frightened** / **frightening** stunts on his bike.

5. Dallas Friday

Everyone was ⁹**surprised** / **surprising** when she won the first of her four X Games titles at the age of fourteen, only a year after she started wakeboarding. It was ¹⁰**embarrassed** / **embarrassing** for other, more experienced wakeboarders who didn't think that someone so young could win.

• How + adjective

V. Write a reaction to the sentences using *What a + noun!* or *How + adjective!* and a word below.

lucky exciting mess rude shame shock
strange

1. I found some money while I was walking to school yesterday. _____ !
2. I can't wait! We're going on holiday to Hoi An next month. _____ !
3. That shop assistant didn't even thank you. _____ !
4. I'm so sad! We didn't qualify for the next round of the football tournament yesterday. _____ !
5. That's odd. She doesn't normally wear a suit. _____ !
6. Can you believe it? She lost her job after only a week! _____ !
7. I dropped the butter all over the floor as I was taking it into the dining room. _____ !

VI. Complete the sentence. Use *How*, *That* or *What a*.

1. We saw *Star Hero* last night. _____ was a mistake! It was an awful film.
2. Four days on the bus with no air conditioning? _____ terrible experience!
3. Did you really see that famous singer? _____ exciting!
4. 'Do you know Linda and Jack?' - 'Yes, I do. _____ nice couple!'
5. 'She lost her winning lottery ticket.' - '_____ was unlucky.'

VII. Choose the correct words.

1. When I got home, there was a burglar in the kitchen. **What** / **How** a shock!
2. I failed all of my exams. **What** / **How** a disaster!
3. Why don't we have a party at the end of term? **What** / **How** a great idea!
4. My dad is going to buy me a new phone. **What** / **How** wonderful!

5. My brother fell asleep in the middle of an interview. **What / How** funny!
6. He got lost in the centre of Bangkok. **What / How** a nightmare!
7. My uncle's house burned down in a fire. **What/ How** terrible!
8. I keep getting text messages from somebody I don't know. **What / How** strange!

1D. Reading

I. Read the article and complete the sentences with information from it.

Stressed Out? Take Control

We all know how it feels to get angry. Sometimes anger is mild, when you're just irritated with someone. But at other times, anger can be more extreme, with explosive rages. You start to shout and throw things around. You lose control. Your blood pressure increases, your heart races and you can't think about anything else. But what exactly is anger?

Anger is a normal response to a situation where you feel you are being attacked, treated unfairly, let down by others, hurt or rejected. Anger can help you to defend yourself, deal with the problem and let others know how you feel. But anger can also cause problems. If you always lose control, people might start to avoid you.

Friends and colleagues may be afraid of your temper and leave you alone. Getting angry might make you feel better, giving you energy and making you feel like you're in control. But it might also leave you feeling hurt and misunderstood. Also, getting angry doesn't usually solve the problem.

So, what can you do about your anger?

1 Work out what makes you angry - You need to understand what situations make you angry. Is it when people make comments about your work or criticise you? Is it that you get angry when you're frustrated and can't do the things you want? Do you get angry when you're tired? Understanding what makes you angry can help you to deal with the problem.

2 Understand the signals - Learn to identify the signs that you're getting angry. Do you start to shout and feel tense? Do you pace about the room? You need to recognise your own signals before you can change your behaviour.

3 Take control of your mind and body - Try taking a step back and distancing yourself from the situation, both physically and emotionally. Check your breathing and take some deep breaths to slow you down and calm your heartbeat. Ask yourself, 'Am I overacting?', 'Am I listening to what people are saying?' Can you find a way to be assertive, rather than aggressive? Try to speak calmly, rather than shout. Try the 'Is it worth it?' test. Ask yourself, 'Will it really matter in one month, one year?' Do some physical exercise, like going for a run or a swim. Or try some meditation or listen to music. Do whatever helps to calm you down.

1. When you get angry, your blood pressure _____ and your heart speeds up.
2. Being angry about something can help others to _____ how you feel.
3. Getting angry is not usually a good way to _____ problems.
4. It's a good idea to understand what _____ make you angry.
5. If you recognise the signs that you are getting angry, then you can start to _____ your behaviour.
6. When you are angry, you should try to _____ yourself from the situation.
7. Deep _____ will help to calm your heartbeat.
8. Try to speak _____ rather than shout.

II. Read the text and do the tasks that follow.

Sometimes the hardest thing about feelings is sharing them with others. But sharing your feelings helps you feel better and also helps you to get closer to people who are important to you.

1 You can't tell your friends what's in your backpack if you don't know what's in there yourself. Feelings are the same. Before you can share them with anyone, you have to

understand what feelings you have. Making a list of your feelings can help. You can do this in your head or by writing it out on a piece of paper. It's sometimes difficult to define a feeling and its cause. In this case, it might help to remember how you felt on a specific occasion, for example, 'I was upset when my friends went to the cinema without me.'

2 Keeping your feelings to yourself can make you feel worse. If you talk to someone who cares for you, like your parents, you will almost always start to feel better. It doesn't mean your problems will magically disappear, but at least someone else knows what the problem is and can help you find solutions. If you don't want to talk to your parents, then try talking to a relative or a counselor at school. Maybe they can help you find a way to talk to your parents about your problems.

3 Once you know who you can talk to, choose a time and place to talk. If you think you'll have trouble saying what you're thinking, write it down on a piece of paper. If the person doesn't understand what you mean, try giving an example of what's concerning you. Some people are more private than others and feel more shy about sharing their feelings. You don't have to share every feeling you have, but it is important to share feelings when you need help.

Task 1. Match headings A-D with paragraphs 1-3. There is one extra heading that you don't need.

- A. How to talk about your feelings _____
- B. Why do we have feelings? _____
- C. Why is it better to talk about your feelings? _____
- D. Focusing on your feelings _____

Task 2. Read the text again, and mark the sentences T (true), F (false), or NM (not mentioned).

- 1. The text is directed at adults. _____
- 2. Sharing your feelings improves your relationship with people that are close to you. _____
- 3. You don't need to understand your feelings before sharing them with others. _____
- 4. You should never talk about your feelings with someone you don't know. _____
- 5. It isn't necessary to express every emotion. _____

III. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Is Chocolate the Answer?

Have you ever wondered what makes people happy? Why are some people on cloud nine while others are always down in the dumps? What's the secret? Is it pots of money, good health, loving relationships, owning the latest gadgets or simply chocolate?

A

The latest World Happiness Report says that prosperity is not the main reason for happiness. If you suffer real hardship, you are unlikely to be happy, but once your basic needs are met, money and material things become less of a necessity. Happiness depends more on recognizing the things you have and appreciating them, rather than getting more things. Yes, money can buy you the latest smartphone, tablet or fashion item, and you might get a kick out of the ownership of these material objects, but this enjoyment is usually short-lived. Remember all those presents you got for Christmas when you opened them, but not for long. A month later, they were lying abandoned at the bottom of a drawer. And have you forgotten those delicious chocolates that made you feel really happy when you were eating them, but ill after you'd finished them all?

B

It seems that deep, long-lasting happiness comes from intangible things rather than things like chocolates and smartphones. One essential factor is human relationships. People who have the support of family members and also have strong relationships are more likely to be happy.

Feeling protected and respected and knowing you can trust in the people around you is vital. But happiness means you have to give and take. Performing acts of kindness and generosity on a regular basis, for example, listening to a friend in need or carrying a neighbour's shopping, will make you feel on the top of the world. Even a simple smile can work wonders. In fact, they say that one smile makes a person feel as good as eating 2,000 bars of chocolate (not at all once, of course).

C

It's not surprising that health is another key contributor to happiness. Poor health will certainly make you feel down to the mouth. But being healthy and staying healthy requires some effort. A healthy diet is crucial and so is regular exercise. Laziness will not make you happy. Exercising for twenty to thirty minutes a day helps to reduce stress and anxiety and makes you feel more positive and optimistic because it releases endorphins (feel-good chemicals). So, if you've been feeling blue and worrying too much about your exams, get exercising. You'll also find that you sleep better.

D

Talking of sleep, do you often wake up feeling miserable? If so, it's probably because you haven't had enough of it. Teenagers tend to go to bed too late and have to get up early, so many suffer from a lack of sleep. Tiredness will certainly affect your happiness levels and put you in a bad mood. It also affects your ability to concentrate and may slow your growth. So if you want to be happy and do well at school, try to get at least eight hours a night.

Now you know the theory, it's time to put it into practice. Smile, everyone!

Task 1. Match headings 1-6 with paragraphs A-D. There are two headings that you do not need.

1. Recharge your body and mood _____
2. Short-lived happiness _____
3. A natural remedy _____
4. Can having more and more make you happy? _____
5. Help and to be helped _____
6. Do well at school and be happy _____

Task 2. Choose the best summary of the text.

- a. An opinion about what society should do to make people happy.
- b. An article about what makes people happy.
- c. A study showing why people find it impossible to be happy.

Task 3. Answer the questions.

1. According to the text, what are the three basic needs which are essential for happiness?

2. What kind of happiness do material objects provide?

3. What does the sentence 'Happiness means you have to give and take' refer to? Give some examples.

4. What effect does exercise have on a person's mood?

5. According to the text, what happens if you do not get enough sleep? Is this true in your experience?

6. What do you agree with in the text? Is there anything you don't agree with?

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

It's a fact: many teenagers take more risks than children and adults. The question is, why? ¹ _____

The 'wow' factor

Have you ever been on a rollercoaster? How did you feel when you got off? Excited? Amazed? **This** is the 'wow' factor, the feeling of pleasure we get when we take and survive a risk. Scientists know that a brain chemical called dopamine causes this feeling of enjoyment. ² _____ Well, some scientists believe that dopamine levels are sometimes lower in adolescence than **they** are in childhood. This means that some teenagers might need to take more risks to get the same 'wow' factor.

'I just felt like it'

Have you ever done something dangerous or frightening without thinking about what happens next? When an adult asks a teenager, 'What were you thinking of when you did **that?**' a common reply is, ³ _____ But the question misses the point, because the point is that the teenager might not have been thinking at all! The teenager had no intention of taking a risk, **it** just 'happened'. A few years ago, scientists made a surprising discovery: the teenage brain goes through many physical changes, and some parts of **it** develop later than others. The last part to fully develop is the frontal cortex. **This** is the area of the brain which allows us to do things such as controlling emotions and making good decisions.

Peer pressure

⁴ _____ Even teenagers who are not usually big risk-takers may suddenly do something dangerous because **they** want to show off or fit in. If you look at statistics, boys often take more risks than girls, perhaps because they don't want to be embarrassed in front of **their** friends - though girls dislike that, too. Boys are more likely not to wear seat belts or motorbike helmets, more likely to get into an argument or a fight, and more likely to carry a weapon, smoke and drink. But is taking risks really the best way to get people to respect, notice and like you?

What can you do

There's no easy solution, but try to make good choices and be independent. Don't get pushed into doing things by your friends. ⁵ _____ Sports, rollercoasters, skateboarding, go-karting and trampolining will all give you the same 'wow' factor. And if you're around seventeen, stop worrying, because your brain has reached the stage where you can more easily make sensible decisions. You've survived up until now, so you've achieved a lot.

Task 1. Match sentences A-G to gaps 1-5 in the text. There are two sentences that you do not need.

- A. 'I just felt like it.'
- B. Have you ever taken a risk to impress your friends?
- C. You can get your dopamine fix in lots of other exciting ways.
- D. They encourage us to take more risks.
- E. Check out the latest theories and what you can do about it.
- F. What has dopamine got to do with you?

G. Girls don't show off very often.

Task 2. What do the bold words in the text refer to?

1. This (paragraph 1):
2. They (paragraph 1):
3. that (paragraph 2):
4. it (just happened) (paragraph 2):
5. it (develop later ...) (paragraph 2):
6. This (paragraph 2):
7. they (paragraph 3):
8. their (paragraph 3):

Pronunciation: Pronunciation of -ed endings in adjectives

I. Put the words with the underlined part into the correct column.

annoyed *interested* *embarrassed* *relaxed* *bored*
confused *overwhelmed* *terrified* *depressed* *disappointed*
fascinated *excited* *frightened* *amused* *tired*
thrilled *worried* *shocked* *satisfied* *surprised*

/t/	/d/	/id/
-----	-----	------

II. Choose a word in each group with the different sound of the -ed ending from the others.

1. A. exhausted B. frustrated C. interested D. relaxed
2. A. amused B. shocked C. satisfied D. ashamed
3. A. embarrassed B. depressed C. bored D. relaxed
4. A. confused B. interested C. fascinated D. disappointed
5. A. astonished B. convinced C. confused D. touched

1E. Speaking

• **Everyday English**

I. Choose the correct response.

1. A: I had a terrible weekend. 2. A: What did you do on Friday evening? 3. A: Did you have a good weekend? 4. A: I went to the cinema. 5. A: I tried surfing when I had a holiday in Nha Trang last week. 6. A: I've tried Superspeed or Kamikaze in Dam Sen Water Park. 7. A: A motorbike hit my bicycle, but luckily I was OK. 8. A: I forgot to give the book back to Phong. I'll do it now. 9. A: I practised basketball yesterday, and I broke a bone in my foot 10. A: I finally finished my science project.	B: a/ Oh, dear. b/ It was OK. B: a/ I didn't. b/ Nothing much. B: a/ It was OK. b/ We're having relatives to stay. B: a/ Cool. What did you see? b/ Oh, dear! B: a/ That's shocking! b/ That's exciting! B: a/ What a cool thing to do! b/ That's terrible! B: a/ Really? What a relief! b/ Really? What a disaster! B: a/ It's OK if you say sorry to him. b/ Oh, no. What a shame! B: a/ Poor you! But don't be so upset! b/ How upsetting! Never try it again. B: a/ That's frustrating! b/ That sounds great!
--	---

• **Narrating events**

II. Match sentences 1-5 with an appropriate reply a-e.

1. 'We're having a party for Kate this evening.' _____

2. 'My flight has been canceled.' _____
3. 'I hope your brother feels better soon.' _____
4. 'I heard that Wendy has quit her job.' _____
5. 'These instructions aren't clear at all.' _____
- a. 'It's shocking news, isn't it?'
- b. 'You certainly look confused.'
- c. 'Yes, I'm quite worried about him.'
- d. 'How exciting!'
- e. 'That's unlucky.'

III. Match the follow-up questions below with the sentences. Then write the answers on your own.

Cool. Where did you go? Really? Who did you visit? Did you win?
What film did you see? Really? What did you buy?

1. 'I went shopping.' - '_____'
2. 'I went to the cinema.' - '_____'
3. 'I played in a football match.' - '_____'
4. 'We visited some relatives.' - '_____'
5. 'I went out with some friends.' - '_____'

IV. Complete the dialogue with the words below.

about buy OK see went

Boy What did you do last Saturday?

Girl I¹ _____ to the cinema.

Boy Really? What did you² _____?

Girl I saw the new Angelia Jolie film? What³ _____ you? Did you have a good weekend?

Boy It was⁴ _____. I went shopping on Saturday.

Girl What did you⁵ _____?

Boy Some new trainers.

V. Complete the dialogue with the questions below.

What did you watch? What did you do on Sunday?
Did you have a good weekend? What did you do on Saturday?
What did you read?

Phong ¹ _____

Nick Yes, I did.

Phong ² _____

Nick I read a book.

Phong ³ _____

Nick A detective story.

Phong ⁴ _____

Nick I stayed in and watched TV.

Phong ⁵ _____

Nick A volleyball match and a film.

VI. Complete the dialogue with the phrases below.

my grandparents for a burger some new trainers to the park

Phong Hi, Nick. What did you do last weekend?

Nick I went shopping on Saturday.

Phong Really? What did you buy?

Nick ¹ _____.

Phong Cool. What did you do on Sunday?

Nick Nothing much. I did my homework in the morning and took the dog for a walk in the afternoon.

Phong Where did you go?

Nick ² _____. What about you? Did you have a good weekend?

Phong It was OK. I watched television on Saturday afternoon. Then I went out with some friends.

Nick Where did you go?

Phong We went ³ _____.

Nick What did you do on Sunday?

Phong I played computer games in the morning and visited some relatives in the afternoon.

Nick Who did you visit?

Phong ⁴ _____.

VII. Complete the dialogue with the sentences below.

A. Where did you go?

B. I played computer games at home.

C. What did you see?

D. BioShock. It was great.

E. What did you get up to at the weekend?

Phong Hi, Nick. How was your weekend?

Nick It was good. I went to the cinema on Saturday.

Phong ¹ _____

Nick The new Marvel film.

Phong Cool. What did you do on Sunday?

Nick Nothing much. I stayed at home and revised. What about you?

² _____

Phong I went out with some friends on Saturday.

Nick ³ _____

Phong To the park near my house.

Nick No way! What about on Sunday?

Phong ⁴ _____

Nick What did you play?

Phong ⁵ _____

VIII. Complete the dialogue with the phrases below.

In the end Guess what it was How exciting! You'll never

Boy ¹ _____ happened to me the other day?

Girl What?

Boy Well, _____ Saturday night and I was walking into town. This huge car stopped beside me ...

Girl Who was it?

Boy ³ _____ guess! It was the lead singer of my favourite band!

Girl No! ⁴ _____ What did he say?

Boy He asked me to give him directions and then we chatted for a bit. ⁵ _____, he drove away.

1F. Writing

• A description of an event

I. Complete the narrative with the clauses below.

a. I discovered that I had accidentally thrown my ticket away

- b. we went out in the evening
- c. none of us had found out the coach times
- d. but it turned out to be a disaster
- e. we sat down on the beach
- f. we set off early in the morning

A terrible day out

Last August, some friends and I decided to go to Vung Tau for the day. It was supposed to be a fun day out,¹ _____ !

² _____, since we wanted to spend as much time as possible on the beach. However,³ _____, so we spent two hours waiting at the coach station. It was nearly midday by the time we arrived at our destination.

⁴ _____, but within a few minutes, it started to rain. After an hour, we gave up and decided to go home. At the station, ⁵ _____, so I had to buy another one! It really was a terrible day. However,⁶ _____ and had a better time.

II. Read the narrative. Put the paragraphs in the correct order, and then complete the chart with the underlined time expressions in the text.

A Suddenly, I felt a pain in my right foot. My grandmother had told us that there were some dangerous fish near the beach. She said that these fish had stung several swimmers recently. I felt guilty that I hadn't put my beach shoes on and I started to cry.

B In the end, my foot stopped hurting and I felt very relieved. Finally, I went back to sit with my grandparents on the beach. I didn't go into the sea again that day, and it was the last time I ever walked on the beach with no shoes.

C Last summer, I was in Nha Trang with my family visiting my grandparents. One day, we decided to go to the coast. We drove to the nearest beach, and put on our swimming costumes. 'Don't forget your beach shoes,' said my mum. But I didn't listen and ran straight into the sea.

D At first, my mother thought I had cut myself on a piece of glass, but then I showed her my foot. There were four small holes where the fish had stung me. We went and asked a lifeguard for help. He told me to sit down, and a few minutes later, he brought a bowl of hot water and told me to put my foot in it. Apparently, the hot water brings the poison out of the foot.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

To start a narrative ¹ _____,

² _____,
To show how a situation changes with time ³ _____,

⁴ _____,
To show a surprise event ⁵ _____,

To move the narrative forward in time ⁶ _____,

To end a narrative ⁷ _____,

⁸ _____,

III. Read the story, and do the tasks that follow.

1. One day last summer, I decided to spend a day by the sea with some friends. We don't live on the coast, so we met in town at nine o'clock in the morning and got on a bus. We arrived at ten. We found a good place, took off our T-shirts and sat down on the sand.

2. Suddenly, we heard a lot of noise. We stood up and looked around. A few people were shouting and waving near the edge of the water. At first I thought there was a shark! But then, I realised that somebody had got into difficulty in the sea. Two men went into the water and carried a girl out. She wasn't moving at all - she unconscious. They put her down on the sand and tried to wake her up.

3. A few minutes later, an ambulance arrived and three medical workers jumped out. They started giving the girl emergency treatment. Just then the girl's mother arrived. She looked shocked and scared. Then the girl sat up and looked around. Her mother was so relieved - she broke down and started crying.

4. In the end, the medical workers left and the girl went off with her mother. She was fine. But we all felt a bit strange - especially when we were swimming in the sea. It was a day I'll never forget.

Task 1. Choose the best summary for the story.

- a. a shocking experience
- b. a terrible holiday
- c. a special occasion

Task 2. Match paragraphs 1-4 with their details a-d.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------|---|
| Paragraph 1 | _____ | a. Main event - girl is rescued. Medical workers and mother arrive. |
| Paragraph 2 | _____ | b. The ending - the girl and her mother leave, but we feel strange. |
| Paragraph 3 | _____ | c. Lead up - shouting. Somebody in difficulty. |
| Paragraph 4 | _____ | d. Set the scene - we go to the beach. |

Task 3. Complete the phrasal verbs from the story. Then choose the correct meaning for these verbs.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------|---|
| 1. get _____ | _____ | a. become very upset |
| 2. take _____ | _____ | b. leave |
| 3. put _____ | _____ | c. place someone or something on the ground |
| 4. break _____ | _____ | d. remove (an item of clothing) |
| 5. go _____ | _____ | e. enter (a vehicle) |

REVIEW UNIT 1

Vocabulary

I. Match the sentence halves.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Nick was very pleased | _____ | A. of heights. |
| 2. I'm fed up | _____ | B. of his behaviour yesterday. |
| 3. She's scared | _____ | C. with his new mobile phone. |
| 4. Kevin and Megan felt guilty | _____ | D. with you! You're so rude! |
| 5. He's ashamed | _____ | E. about the lies they told. |

II. Choose the best adjective to describe each person's feelings.

1. I wanted to buy that coat, but it was too expensive.
a. nervous b. confused c. disappointed
2. I've been abroad for two months and I really want to see my family and friends.
a. amused b. homesick c. shocked
3. I thought I'd lost my phone, but I found it in my bag.
a. confused b. relieved c. embarrassed
4. My school got the best exam results in the country.
a. ashamed b. nervous c. proud
5. I fancy the girl next door, but she fancies my close friend.
a. jealous b. afraid c. guilty

III. Complete the sentences with the words below.

upset disappointed homesick delighted fed up

1. When my brother lived abroad, he was very _____ at first.
2. I was really _____ with the terrible weather. It rained all weekend.
3. When I opened the present, I was _____. It was exactly what I wanted.
4. When I heard about the accident, I was _____.
5. I was sure I'd get the scholarship. When I didn't, I was quite _____.

IV. Complete the text with the words below.

jumped survived injured scratched escaped twisted

A local man has ¹ _____ a serious fire at his home. He woke up when his cat ² _____ at his door. He picked up the cat then ³ _____ through a window and fell into the garden. However, he badly ⁴ _____ himself on the grass and he ⁵ _____ his ankle. Luckily, he ⁶ _____ from the burning building without any bumps. Firefighters arrived quickly at the scene to put out the blaze.

Grammar

V. Complete the sentences with the correct past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

1. My dad _____ (play) basketball every weekend when he was a teenager.
2. A player kicked Nick and he _____ (have to) go off.
3. Last summer Jane _____ (compete) in a table tennis championship and she won.
4. We _____ (not go) to the beach yesterday because the weather was bad.
5. He _____ (score) in the final minute of the match and everyone cheered.

VI. Write questions in the past simple for these answers.

1. He sailed around the world with his best friend. (who?)

2. He scored five goals in the match. (how many?)

3. I learned to swim when I was five. (when?)

4. They had the speaking competition in Ha Noi last year. (where?)

5. He didn't tell the answer to the teacher because he was very shy. (why?)

Word Skills

VII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. The TV programme we saw last night was _____. We were really scared, (frighten)
2. Did they sell you this DVD for £30? I'm _____. You should take it back, (shock)
3. Parents are often _____ about their children's safety, (worry)
4. We didn't understand the directions they had given us. We felt _____. (confuse)
5. What books do you find more _____? Crime thrillers or sci-fi novels? (excite)

VIII. Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Hi Anna,

I'm supposed to be studying, but I find history a bit ¹ _____ (bore). I thought it would probably be more ² _____ (interest) to write to you!

The problem is my last exam results. Actually, I'm quite ³ _____ (disappoint) because I thought I'd passed everything. In the end, I failed three subjects, which is a bit ⁴ _____ (annoy) as I have to take them again next week. I'd planned to play

badminton with my friends today, and I was quite ⁵ _____ (excite) about going. However, my parents, in their ⁶ _____ (wise), have said that my ⁷ _____ (educate) comes first, so they've made me stay at home studying. Of course, my friends have no sense of ⁸ _____ (loyal) and they've gone to the match without me. What do you think of that? Never mind. I'm not really ⁹ _____ (surprise). I guess I would have done the same in their position. So what are you doing right now? I hope you don't feel as ¹⁰ _____ (exhaust) as you did last time we spoke on the phone. Maybe we can meet up when my exams are over.

Anyway, write soon and tell me what's been happening.

Love

Mai/

IX. Complete the dialogue with the reactions below.

What an adventure!

What happened?

Didn't you have the address with you?

How exciting!

What a disaster!

How dangerous!

A Did I ever tell you about the time I got lost in Cambodia?

B Oh, no! Tell me more. ¹ _____

A Well, after a long journey by coach, we jumped straight into a taxi to go off exploring the capital.

B ² _____

A Yes, it was. And we were really enjoying ourselves until we realised we didn't know where the hotel was.

B Oh, no! ³ _____

A Well, no. We'd been in such a hurry to go out, that nobody had brought the name of the hotel or the address with them.

B ⁴ _____

A Well, it could have been, but luckily we found a taxi driver who said his girlfriend spoke English, so we got in the taxi with him to go and fetch his girlfriend.

B ⁵ _____

A Yes, I supposed it was, but we were lucky because he drove straight to her house.

Somehow she knew which hotel we were talking about and she directed him straight there!

B ⁶ _____

A Yes, but it was a great experience.

Use of English

X. Rewrite the sentences. Use the words in brackets and prepositions *about, of or with* if necessary.

1. I don't like spiders, (afraid)

I'm _____.

2. He knew he shouldn't have stolen it. (guilty)

He felt _____.

3. Did your exam results please you? (satisfied)

Were you _____?

4. What don't you understand? (confused)

What are you _____?

5. They're annoying him. (irritated)

He's getting _____.

6. I feel happy that I got good exam results, (pleased)

I'm _____.

7. They didn't like the bad weather, (fed up)

They were _____.

8. She doesn't like her sister, (jealous)
She's _____.
9. Why are you sad? (depressed)
What are _____?
10. Did the zombies frighten you? (scared)
Were you _____?

XI. Match sentences 1-5 with an appropriate reply a-e.

1. 'The Adele concert is in two days!'
 2. 'I lost my keys and phone yesterday.'
 3. 'I'm sorry that Nam was in hospital.'
 4. 'We were just in time for the flight.'
 5. 'These instructions are in the wrong order.'
- a. 'That was lucky.'
 - b. 'Yes, it's quite worrying.'
 - c. 'How confusing!'
 - d. 'I'm so excited.'
 - e. 'Oh, what a nightmare!'

XII. Complete the text with the correct words.

I can't deny that I'm afraid ¹ _____ spiders and it's true that I ² _____ feel comfortable when there's one in the room. As a child, I used ³ _____ and scream whenever I saw one, and I could never imagine ⁴ _____ it out myself. It was my older sister who ⁵ _____ me how to do this.

One weekend, I was staying with her because my parents ⁶ _____ away. We ⁷ _____ up when suddenly we found an enormous spider in her bed. She didn't look ⁸ _____ but she certainly wasn't feeling as ⁹ _____ as I was. She just ¹⁰ _____ a plastic box over the spider, covered the box with a piece of cardboard and took the spider outside.

A few years later, I ¹¹ _____ at home alone when I saw a large spider walking across the floor. I remembered ¹² _____ my sister that day and I decided ¹³ _____ her trick. When I had removed the spider, I called my sister immediately to tell her what ¹⁴ _____ happened.

1. A. about B. with C. of D. in
2. A. am not B. doesn't C. isn't D. don't
3. A. to crying B. to cry C. cry D. cried
4. A. taking B. to take C. take D. took
5. A. was teaching B. had taught C. taught D. teach
6. A. had gone B. are going C. went D. go
7. A. had tidied B. were tidying C. tidy D. tidied
8. A. pleased B. relieved C. fed up D. proud
9. A. delighted B. nervous C. guilty D. sad
10. A. had put B. was putting C. put D. puts
11. A. had sat B. was sitting C. sat D. sit
12. A. to watch B. watching C. watch D. saw
13. A. tried B. trying C. to try D. try
14. A. were B. did C. was D. had

Reading

XIII. Read the text, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

I've Been Here Before!

It's a strange sensation. A new place that seems familiar or an event that you're sure has happened before. How many of us have had this experience? Apparently, over 70%. It's

called déjà vu and according to the experts it's not something new but has been happening to people for hundreds of years.

So, what explanations are there for this strange feeling that is both confusing and uncomfortable? Some scientists think that it is related to dreams and memory. It appears that although the majority of us cannot recall our dreams, we actually store the memory of dreams in our long-term memory. This deep memory can come back sometimes when we are in a similar situation and makes us think that we have done this before.

However, as usual, not all experts agree. Those who believe in reincarnation - the idea that we have all lived before - say that these feelings are fragments of memories from previous lives. But, whatever the reason for déjà vu, one thing it shows is how complicated and amazing our brains are and that we are a long way from understanding completely how the brain, and in particular, how our memories work.

1. Déjà vu is the feeling that something familiar is unfamiliar. _____
2. People have been experiencing déjà vu for the last hundred years. _____
3. Some people think that déjà vu is related to dreams we can't remember. _____
4. Some people think that this is not our first or only life. _____
5. Soon we will understand how our brains work. _____

UNIT 2: Adventure

2A. Vocabulary

• Landscapes: features and adjectives

I. Complete the sentences with the below.

<i>cliffs</i>	<i>waterfalls</i>	<i>lake</i>	<i>mountains</i>	<i>hill</i>
<i>valley</i>	<i>cave</i>	<i>shores</i>	<i>forest</i>	<i>desert</i>

1. She was standing at the mouth of the _____, and heard a noise coming from inside.
2. The birds breed mainly on sea _____ and in sea caves.
3. They enjoyed the beautiful views of snow-capped _____.
4. Very little can grow in this arid _____.
5. We were on a ridge above a green _____, with the mountains beyond it.
6. She could see _____ falling down some of the mountain sides.
7. The area we passed through was once thick _____.
8. They can go fishing in the _____.
9. Wearing a pair of trainers, he walked up the steep _____ with the energy of a young mountain climber.
10. The fish is commonly found off the _____ of Australia.

• Adjectives to describe adventure

II. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. We looked down in the **dark** / **steep** / **wide** valley below.
2. The paths are often very **narrow** / **shallow** / **rocky** so strong boots are advisable.
3. The swimming pool has a deep end and a **steep** / **shallow** / **wide** end for kids.
4. It was a **dark** / **deep** / **shallow** night with clouds covering the moon.
5. His shoes and clothing were wet and **deep** / **icy** / **wide** cold.
6. The sun was **dark** / **wide** / **low** in the sky now, and the sunset is coming soon.
7. We'll take the boat out into **deep** / **shallow** / **steep** water where we can dive.
8. She climbed through a **narrow** / **deep** / **shallow** gap in the fence.

9. The cat was hiding in the **wide** / **narrow** / **tall** grass in the backyard.
10. She stood at the top of the **low** / **steep** / **tall** path leading to the beach.

• **Prepositions of movement and position**

III. Choose the correct words.

1. Drive **at** / **through** / **over** the gate and you'll see the main road.
2. He turned **in** / **Ø** / **up** left.
3. Turn **in** / **to** / **onto** Winston Road.
4. She was walking **at** / **straight** / **along** Queen Street.
5. Go **past** / **on** / **after** the supermarket.
6. Just **follow** / **along** / **across** the lane towards the cafe and you'll see the post office.

IV. Choose the correct words.

1. We walked **behind** / **through** / **beside** the forest in the snow - it was very beautiful.
2. We didn't go **inside** / **under** / **behind** the cave because it was very dark.
3. It was difficult to climb **up** / **down** / **under** the steep hill, but David got to the bottom.
4. I dived **inside** / **across** / **under** the water to see the colourful fish.
5. The bridge goes **through** / **across** / **along** the deep river.
6. I walked **across** / **along** / **through** the door and saw all the people inside.
7. We sailed **across** / **down** / **under** the Golden Gate Bridge.
8. We followed the path **along** / **beside** / **through** the shore for several miles.
9. Ann came up and sat **beside** / **under** / **across** me.
10. It's very hot, so let's sit over there **down** / **under** / **behind** those trees.

V. Complete the text with suitable prepositions.

Space: the Ultimate Frontier

Virgin Galactic is on the point of making space travel available to every man and woman on the street. Passengers will spend three days preparing for the trip before they set ¹ _____. After this training period, they will go to the purpose-built Mojave Spaceport in the Californian desert to check ² _____ for their flight. Here they get ³ _____ the spacecraft. A specially designed jet carrier aircraft will carry them through the atmosphere, and then the spacecraft will be launched into space. Here passengers will take ⁴ _____ their seatbelts and enjoy the experience of zero gravity. They will look ⁵ _____ of the window and see the Earth as they have never seen it before. Later they will go ⁶ _____ to their seats which will now be in reclining position, and they will return to the spaceport lying ⁷ _____. After the spacecraft touches ⁸ _____, the passengers will get ⁹ _____ and make their way to the celebration dinner awaiting them. When they check ¹⁰ _____ of the complex the next day, they will have an unforgettable memory of their days at Mojave, which they will be talking about for days to come.

• **Extreme adjectives**

VI. Match the pair of adjectives with similar meanings. Which ones are more extreme?

Complete the chart.

astonished bad big brilliant clever
delighted enormous good happy important
scared small surprised terrible terrific
tiny vital

adjective	extreme adjective
-----------	-------------------

VII. Choose the correct answers.

1. That's a **terrified** / **terrific** result. Well done!
2. My uncle was **terrified** / **astonished** that it was so easy to learn how to use the computer.
3. It's **vital** / **delighted** to employ someone to improve our computer security.
4. I'm **brilliant** / **delighted** that the police have found our bicycle.
5. Some bank robbers are **vital** / **brilliant** people. They have very clever plans.

VIII. Replace the simple adjectives in brackets with extreme adjectives. The first letter of each extreme adjective has been given.

1. What we could see from the top of the mountain was a _____. (very surprising)
2. The place where we stayed when we were hiking was f _____. (very dirty)
3. The safety helmet doesn't fit me - it's t _____. (very small)
4. Doing a bungee jump was t _____. (very frightening)
5. The brown bear that was walking towards us looked e _____. (very big)
6. The hill we had to climb looked h _____. (very big)
7. The countryside we were walking through was s _____. (very beautiful)
8. After completing the marathon, he was e _____. (very tired)

• Sports equipment

IX. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases below.

rope *boots* *safety harness* *paddles*
rucksack *dinghy* *poles* *life jacket*

1. Don't worry about falling off the climbing wall - you'll be wearing a _____
2. If you go out to sea on a boat, it's a good idea to wear a _____.
3. When I went out to the sea with my friends, I dropped my hat over the side of the _____.
4. If you go hiking in the countryside, take a _____ so that you can carry things in it.
5. When I'm walking on rocky ground, my _____ stop me from falling over.
6. In the mountains you'll need some strong walking _____.
7. When I went kayaking, I broke my _____ and had to use my hands to get to the edge of the river.
8. They tied a _____ around my waist and pulled me up.

• Outdoor activities

X. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases below.

paintballing *kite surfing* *abseiling* *orienteering*
jet-skiing *mountain biking* *quad biking* *rock climbing*

1. I don't really like _____ because it's dangerous and too noisy.
2. _____ is a good sport to do if you like looking at maps.
3. In _____ you shoot small container of paint at people.
4. In _____ lessons, I tried to hold on to a rope which is fastened to the top of the slope and went down a very steep slope.
5. He has a lot of courage and a sense of adventure, so he enjoys _____ and other mountain activities.
6. His father bought him a motorbike with four large wheels so that he could rode in _____.
7. He enjoys flying a kite and he also likes surfing, so the best option for him is _____.
8. Peter bought a bicycle with thick tyres and a lot of gears so he could rode on hills and rough ground in a race of _____.

2B. Grammar

• Past continuous

I. Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs below.

look *do* *wait* *not listen* *watch*

1. Which programme _____ you _____ on TV?
2. _____ you _____ for us? I'm sorry we're late.
3. They didn't see the thief. They _____ in the shop window.
4. Could you repeat that, please? I _____.
5. _____ he _____ his homework in the library at that time?

II. Complete the text with the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

At 8.00 p.m., we arrived at Mike's party. Mike ¹ _____ (stand) in the kitchen. He ² _____ (eat) a pizza. We said hello, but he ³ _____ (not listen). Sue and Jane ⁴ _____ (dance) in the hall. Maria ⁵ _____ (sit) on the stairs. She ⁶ _____ (hold) her head in her hands. Her shoulders ⁷ _____ (shake) but she ⁸ _____ (not cry). She ⁹ _____ (laugh)!

III. Complete the dialogue with the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

Policeman What ¹ _____ (you / do) at 8 o'clock yesterday evening?

Man I ² _____ (watch) TV.

Policeman Really? What ³ _____ (you / watch)?

Man A film.

Policeman What was it called?

Man Well, I can't remember. I ⁴ _____ (not pay) attention.

Policeman I see. And why is your jacket wet?

Man I ⁵ _____ (wear) it this morning when I went out.

Policeman But it ⁶ _____ (not rain) this morning!

• Contrast: past simple and past continuous

IV. Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- I _____ (meet) a friend while I _____ (walk) to school yesterday.
- She _____ (finish) her lunch and _____ (leave) the cafe.
- I _____ (not see) that goal because I _____ (not look).
- I _____ (open) the curtains and _____ (look) outside; it _____ (not rain) but the sky was grey.
- He _____ (not hear) the phone because he _____ (listen) to his DVD player.
- She _____ (get up) and _____ (have) a shower.

. Choose the correct tense: past simple or past continuous.

Last winter, Paul ¹**had / was having** a nasty accident while he ²**skied / was skiing**. He was with his friend Joe. It was a beautiful morning. The sun ³**shone / was shining** and lots of people ⁴**skied / were skiing**. Suddenly, Joe ⁵**lost / was losing** control as he was going round a corner and ⁶**crashed / was crashing** into Paul. Paul ⁷**fell / was falling** and broke his leg. An ambulance ⁸**arrived / was arriving** and ⁹**took / was taking** him to hospital. Paul was in hospital for two weeks.

VI. Complete the sentences. Use *did, didn't, was, wasn't, were or weren't*.

- 'How many goals _____ he score?' - 'He _____ score any goals. He _____ playing.'
- '_____ you playing table tennis when he arrived?' - 'No, we _____.'
- '_____ he ring while she _____ doing her homework?' - 'Yes, he _____.'
- '_____ she win the race?' - 'Yes, she _____.'
- What _____ you do when you got home?
- '_____ you watch the match while you _____ having dinner?' - 'No, we _____.'

VII. Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- Everyone was chatting when the teacher _____ (come) in.
- I cooked dinner while they _____ (watch) the football match on TV.
- We didn't play football this morning because it _____ (rain).
- When we arrived at the canteen, Nick _____ (wait) for us outside.
- While we were coming home, we _____ (see) an accident.

VIII. Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs below.

- wait chat cook pass arrive*
1. He _____ the ball to Phong and then ran down the ground.
 2. When I _____ home, my mum was cooking dinner.
 3. While I _____ to my sister, the phone rang.
 4. I _____ for you in the park when it started to rain.
 5. He _____ dinner while I was watching TV.

IX. Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Last year, Nick and his dad ¹ _____ (visit) the USA. While they ² _____ (stay) in Los Angeles, they ³ _____ (go) to a basketball game between the Los Angeles Lakers and the Chicago Bulls. The atmosphere inside the stadium ⁴ _____ (be) really exciting. Thousands of spectators ⁵ _____ (cheer). The Los Angeles Lakers ⁶ _____ (score) 30 points in the last 10 minutes, but they ⁷ _____ (not win). After the game, one of the players ⁸ _____ (throw) the ball into the crowd and a man in front of them ⁹ _____ (catch) it. While they ¹⁰ _____ (leave) the stadium, the man ¹¹ _____ (give) them the ball and ¹² _____ (say): 'Here's a souvenir!'

2C. Word Skills

• Word building: Related verbs and nouns

I. Complete the sentences with nouns from the verbs in brackets.

1. The lights went out but our eyes quickly got used to the _____. (**dark**)
2. It's important that young people leave school with good qualifications. I think the government should spend more money on _____. (**educate**)
3. 'It's a long film. Why don't we eat before we go to the cinema?' - 'That's a very good _____. ' (**suggest**)
4. They had a _____ about global warming. (**discuss**)
5. My uncle works for Greenpeace. It's a large _____ that campaigns for the environment. (**organise**)
6. Could you give me some _____ about trains to Ha Noi, please? (**inform**)
7. Fruit and vegetables are full of _____. (**good**)

II. Complete the sentences with the correct noun formed from the verbs below.

- imagine relax motivate employ*
examine explore entertain achieve
1. Most people watch TV for _____, and after that for their knowledge and information.
 2. You need a lot of _____ if you want to become a professional sportsman.
 3. You need a lot of _____ to write a good story.
 4. Fishing is his favourite _____.
 5. I'm reading an interesting book about the _____ of the South Pole.
 6. Completing the marathon at the top ten was a real _____ for an old man like him.
 7. The new company is going to bring a lot of _____ to our town.
 8. On closer _____, the vases were seen to be cracked.

• Noun suffixes: -ness, -ity, -ion

III. Read about the famous people. Change the adjectives below to nouns and match them to the descriptions.

- addicted bald deaf disabled short-sighted*
1. Alexander Graham Bell is famous for inventing the telephone, but did you know that his wife, Mabel Gardiner Hubbard, wasn't able to hear it ring? _____

2. Film star Johnny Depp is often seen in glasses. He finds it difficult to see objects that are far away. _____
3. Franklin Delano Roosevelt was President of the United States from 1933 to 1945. He was paralyzed by polio in 1921, but only used his wheelchair in private. _____
4. Julius Caesar was one of the most powerful leaders in history. He also had no hair on his head. _____
5. French writer Honoré de Balzac drank hundreds of cups of coffee a day. He just couldn't sleep. _____

IV. Are the words in bold in the correct form in each sentence? Correct seven mistakes.

1. 'I was surprised by Mia's **react** when I told her we were meeting Dan.' - 'So was I. I couldn't believe the **expression** on her face.'

2. We would like to **conclude** this concert with a piano piece by Brahms.
3. My history teacher at school made a big **impress** on me - that's why I did history at university.

4. The police say that the gang of shoplifters have made a full **confess**.

5. 'I heard about your dad's **decide** to stop you going out with Jim and David' - 'Yeah, he said he wanted to **protection** me from their bad influence.'

6. The **divide** of any number by zero is actually impossible.

7. The town council has agreed to **situate** the new concert hall away from any housing areas.

8. What's the **connect** between Winnie the Pooh and Attila the Hun? They have the same middle name.

2D. Reading

I. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Friendly Dolphins Save Swimmers

One morning in November 2018, four people were ¹ _____ in the sea about 100 metres from the beach near Auckland, New Zealand. They were ² _____ lifeguards on a training swim. Suddenly, about ten dolphins appeared and started to swim around them in circles. At first, the swimmers were worried - they ³ _____ that the dolphins were ⁴ _____ them. One of the swimmers, Ron Howes, tried to swim back to the beach, but the dolphins stopped him and pushed him back to other swimmers. Suddenly, one of the swimmers ⁵ _____. There was a three-metre shark and it was swimming towards them through the ⁶ _____ blue water. It came very close to the swimmers. It was only metres away, but it couldn't attack them because the dolphins were there. The dolphins stayed with the swimmers for 40 minutes. ⁷ _____, the shark swam away and the dolphins let the swimmers return to the beach. A scientist, Rosemary Finn, who studies the

behavior of dolphins, wasn't surprised when she heard the story. 'Dolphins often help other animals and fish when they are in trouble in the sea,' she said.

Task 1. Complete the text with the words below.

attacking clear eventually professional
screamed swimming thought

Task 2. Put the events of the story in the correct order.

- _____ A. One of the swimmers screamed when she saw a shark.
- _____ B. The dolphins started to swim around the people.
- _____ C. Ron tried to swim back to the beach.
- 1 D. The lifeguards were on a training swim.
- _____ E. The shark swam away.
- _____ F. Ten dolphins appeared.
- _____ G. The dolphins stayed with the swimmers for 40 minutes.
- _____ H. The shark tried to attack the swimmers.
- _____ I. The swimmers returned to the beach.
- _____ J. The dolphins pushed Ron back to other swimmers.

Task 3. Answer the questions.

1. Where were the swimmers?

2. How many dolphins appeared?

3. Why were the swimmers worried at first?

4. What did one of the swimmers try to do?

5. Why did one of the swimmers scream?

6. How long did the dolphins stay with the swimmers?

II. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Volcanic Adventures

A Last summer on my gap year I spent some time in Indonesia, and I went on a three-day trip to Mount Rinjani, an active volcano on the island of Lombok. It was one of the most incredible experiences of my life. Up at the top of the volcano, I explored the caves and admired the panoramic views across to the bigger island of Bali, before swimming in the hot springs of the crater lake. Unbelievable! I'm already thinking about where to go for next year's adventure! After I find a job, of course... © **Jess, 19**

B I'm studying in Nicaragua this year, and the best thing I've ever done in my life has to be the trip I went on to an active volcano called Cerro Negro! Having trekked up to the top, I then spent a few terrifying minutes surfing to the bottom. I'd recommend this to anyone who enjoys a bit of a thrill, but leave the acrobatics for the experienced surfers. If you fall off your board, the sides of the volcano are unbelievably hot. Trust me - I found out the hard way! **Dominic, 21**

C Our parents took us to Iceland last summer, and for a family holiday it was actually pretty cool. In fact, there is a limit to how many bubbling hot geysers and breathtaking scenery we could take! The best thing was a day trip (you've got to be 12 or over to do this trip) to a dormant volcano called Thrihnukagigur. We had to hike for about an hour across lava fields to get to it, before being kitted out with the helmets and safety harnesses to get to the bottom of the 120-metre crater. Once there, we couldn't believe our eyes: breathtaking rock formations and incredible colours everywhere. Having a 'hot pot' swim in another geyser after being underground all day was kind of fun too! **Naomi (14), Sean (16)**

Task 1. Match the words and the definitions.

1. crater _____ **A.** not active
2. thrill _____ **B.** provide the appropriate equipment to do something
3. geysers _____ **C.** a feeling of excitement
4. dormant _____ **D.** natural hot springs
5. kit out with _____ **E.** a large hole at the mouth of a volcano

Task 2. Which review mentions...

1. an excursion that takes three days to do? _____
2. special equipment you need? _____
3. a dangerous activity for experienced people only? _____

Task 3. Read the text again, and choose the correct answer.

1. Jess was in Indonesia _____.
 A. because she was studying there
 B. to meet her parents
 C. while she was travelling for a year
2. Mt Rinjani _____.
 A. gave Jess the most incredible experience of her life
 B. has a lake you can swim in
 C. is where Jess is going next year
3. While Dominic was in Nicaragua, he _____.
 A. climbed a volcano but was too frightened to surf down
 B. went surfing down a volcano
 C. found it hard to do acrobatics while surfing
4. The day trip Naomi and Sean did _____.
 A. is not available to anyone under the age of 12
 B. had only a limited number of geysers
 C. involved a swim in an underground geyser

III. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Action Woman

Young Kira Salak is an explorer with a **mission**. She wants to find the undiscovered corners of our planet. A difficult task, you might think, in the age of GPS technology and Google™ maps. However, according to Kira there are still plenty of new places to visit and new adventures to experience. What is more, Kira prefers to travel alone unlike the famous

explorers of the past, who would set off with an enormous team of helpers.



But what makes a young woman leave her studies and family at the age of 19 to go on dangerous journeys across **scorching** deserts, through dense jungles and along fast-flowing rivers? Kira explains that as a teenager she used to suffer from low **self-esteem**. She thought solo adventure trips would help her to discover what she could do. She was right.

For her first adventure, Kira decided to go backpacking across southern Africa. In spite of the hardships of the journey, the trip had been going well until she went to Mozambique. This was a country that was in the middle of a civil war. She was travelling near the border with Zimbabwe when she was **kidnapped** by soldiers from Mozambique and taken to their base. Despite the frightening situation, Kira kept calm and asked if she could go to the toilet. It was her opportunity to escape and she **fled** into the night, running all the way back to the Zimbabwe border and safety.

After such an experience, most people would be **put off** exploring for life. Kira, however, had learned a valuable lesson about herself: she was braver and stronger than she had realized. With her new self-confidence, she planned more trips. She wanted to visit somewhere that very few travellers had been to. The destination she chose was Papua New Guinea. This was considered one of the most difficult islands in the world to cross because of its thick jungle and difficult **waterways**. That didn't stop Kira. She cut through the jungle and canoed her way across the island to become one of the few visitors to complete the journey, and the first foreign woman to do it.

These days Kira's family and friends are used to her going off on long expeditions. Since her trip to Papua New Guinea, she has travelled across Alaska, Bhutan, the Congo, Mali, Peru, Mexico and the Himalayas. She is always searching for hidden, unexplored corners to tell people about. Kira has recorded her travel experiences in newspaper and magazine articles, and a number of novels. In fact, as well as being a respected adventurer, she is also considered an **accomplished** travel writer and she has been presented with various awards for her writing. To most of us it all sounds incredible, but Kira says that travelling shows us no

culture is better, or worse, than another. She also adds that the majority of people on the planet want the same thing: peace, happiness and a good life for their children.

Task 1. Choose the correct answers.

1. Kira travels abroad _____.
 A. with a GPS to find unknown places
 B. with a group of fellow adventurers
 C. by herself
 D. with famous explorers
2. Going on adventures alone _____.
 A. helped Kira become a more confident person
 B. helped Kira do well at school
 C. was her parents' idea
 D. was part of her studies
3. The soldiers from Mozambique kidnapping Kira _____.
 A. took her to Zimbabwe B. helped her escape
 C. were backpacking D. let her go to the toilet
4. Papua New Guinea was a place that _____.
 A. was frequently visited by travellers
 B. has never been crossed by a foreigner
 C. is easy to cross by boat
 D. had never been crossed by a foreign woman before
5. Kira likes to _____.
 A. visit places that everybody has been to
 B. write about her family and friends
 C. find places that are unknown to most people
 D. receive awards for her expeditions
6. Kira says that travel has made her realize that _____.
 A. the people of the world are very different
 B. people everywhere have the same hopes
 C. she is different from most people
 D. life is better in other countries

Task 2. Read the text again. Decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F)?

1. Kira finished her studies before leaving on her first expedition. _____.
2. Kira was lacking in confidence as a teenager. _____.
3. Kira panicked when she was captured by the soldiers. _____.
4. Travelling hasn't helped Kira change as a person. _____.
5. Kira's family and friends are not surprised by her adventures any more. _____.
6. Kira has done well as an author. _____.

Task 3. Match the words in bold in the text with these definitions.

1. highly skilled at something _____
2. to make somebody not like something _____
3. a passage of water where boats can travel _____
4. a good opinion of your own character and abilities _____
5. extremely hot _____
6. ran away from something _____
7. taken away by force and kept prisoner _____
8. a particular task which you feel you should do _____

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Sir Ranulph Fiennes - the World's Greatest Living Explorer

In 1984, the Guinness Book of Records described Sir Ranulph Fiennes as the world's greatest living explorer. Since then, **he** has continued to break world records and to take on and pull off some of the most difficult challenges on the Earth. But who is Sir Ranulph, and why are people so amazed by his breathtaking achievements?

Sir Ranulph, who is a distant cousin of Queen Elizabeth II, was born into a wealthy, aristocratic family in 1944. When he was nineteen, he became a soldier in the British Army and spent a lot of time in Oman in the Middle East. During **that**, he became the youngest captain in the army, learned about survival skills and took up the sports of climbing and skiing.

In the late 1960s, after almost eight years of service, Sir Ranulph left the army. He has been an adventurer ever since, and has led expeditions all over the world. On his two early expeditions, he went down the River Nile in a hovercraft and crossed a huge glacier in Norway. However, it wasn't until 1979, when he was in his thirties, that he made one of his first really famous journeys. With two old friends, he set out on an amazing and risky adventure, **which** took over three years to complete. **They** sailed south to the Antarctic, crossed the South Pole, then sailed north to the Arctic, and finally travelled to the North Pole. They didn't get back to Britain until 1982. It was the first time anybody went round the world in this direction, using only surface transport. Nobody has been able to do **it** again since.



Since visiting both poles, he has led an expedition to discover a lost city in the deserts of Oman and has also walked across the Antarctic. **This** journey was record-breaking because it was the first time that a man or woman went across the continent by only walking and skiing. In other words, Sir Ranulph, **who** was almost fifty years old at the time, didn't use any machines at all. He went on this incredible journey on his own, and it took **him** ninety-three days. Then, in 2009, he climbed Mount Everest - despite the fact that he was sixty-five years old, and afraid of heights.

Naturally, there has been a price to pay for his bravery. Not all of his expeditions have been successful, and he has had some terrible experiences. In 2000, for example, he attempted to walk across the Arctic by himself, and his sledge and all his equipment fell through a hole in the ice. Sir Ranulph had to pull everything out with his hands, and the ice was so cold that he got severe frostbite. When he got back home, doctors cut off the ends of some of his fingers. He has also lost toes to frostbite and has had a heart attack.

Perhaps Sir Ranulph's most amazing challenge was the one he completed in 2003, when he was nearly sixty. He ran seven marathons on seven countries in seven days. He started by

running a marathon in South America, flew to Antarctica and ran another marathon in Australia, Singapore, Britain, Egypt, and finally, the USA.

There have been some amazing explorers in history, but few have achieved as much as Sir Ranulph Fiennes.

Task 1. Read the article and put Sir Ranulph's experiences in the order that they happened in his life.

- _____ a. He tried to go across the Arctic alone.
- _____ b. He went up to the top of Mount Everest.
- _____ c. He was a soldier in the British Army.
- _____ d. He lost some of his fingers because of the cold.
- _____ e. He went round the world from south to north.
- _____ f. He ran seven marathons in a week.
- _____ g. He walked over a Norwegian glacier.
- _____ h. He discovered a lost city in 1992.

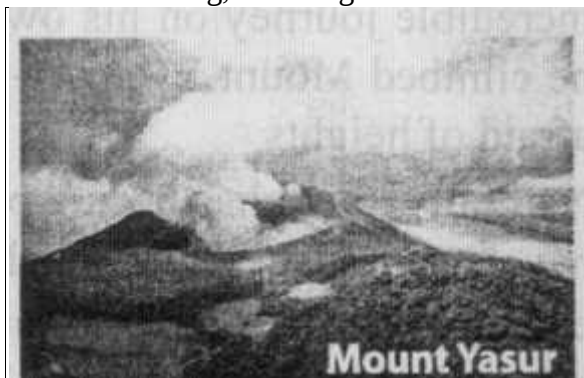
Task 2. Study the pronouns in bold in the article. What do they refer to?

- 1. he (paragraph 1)
- 2. that (paragraph 2)
- 3. which (paragraph 3)
- 4. They (paragraph 3)
- 5. it (paragraph 3)
- 6. This (journey) (paragraph 4)
- 7. who (paragraph 4)
- 8. him (paragraph 4)

IV. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question.

Adventure Island

Vanuatu is a nation of small islands in the South Pacific. It is one of the smallest countries in the world. But for **those** interested in adventure and sport, there is a lot to do. Some of the best swimming, snorkeling, and sea kayaking can be found here. Vanuatu's islands also offer visitors two of the most exciting, and dangerous activities in the world:



volcano surfing and land diving.

On Tanna Island, Mount Yasur rises 300 metres into the sky. Yasur is one of a few active volcanoes in the country. It erupts almost every day, sometimes several times a day. For centuries, both island locals and visitors have climbed this mountain to visit the top. Recently, people have also started climbing Yasur to surf the volcano. In some ways, volcano surfing is like surfing in the sea, but in other ways, it's very different. A volcano surfer's goal is to escape the erupting volcano - without being hit by flying rocks. It's fast, fun, and dangerous - the perfect extreme sport.

Most people are familiar with bungee jumping. But did you know bungee jumping started on Pentecost Island in Vanuatu, and is almost 15 centuries old? The original activity, called land diving, is part of a religious ceremony. A man ties tree vines around his ankles. He then jumps headfirst from a high tower. The goal is to touch **the earth** with the top of his

head - without breaking the vine or hitting the ground hard. Every spring, island natives (men only) still perform this amazing test of bravery.



1. What is the purpose of the reading?
 - A. to encourage people not to do dangerous sports
 - B. to explain what volcano surfing and land surfing are
 - C. to talk about the world's best volcano surfer and land surfer
 - D. to compare Vanuatu with other islands in the South Pacific
2. What does the word **“those”** in paragraph 1 refer to?
 - A. people
 - B. countries
 - C. activities
 - D. islands
3. Which sentence about Vanuatu is **NOT** true?
 - A. It is a small nation in the South Pacific.
 - B. It is where bungee jumping began.
 - C. It has more than one active volcano.
 - D. It is famous for a sport called volcano diving.
4. Which sentence is true about Mount Yasur?
 - A. It is no longer active.
 - B. It is more than 1,000 metres high.
 - C. People have been climbing it for a long time.
 - D. It's on Pentecost Island.
5. Which sentence is true about land diving?
 - A. It was first called “bungee jumping.”
 - B. It came to Vanuatu from another country.
 - C. It is less popular today than in the past.
 - D. It is a traditional activity in Vanuatu.
6. What does the phrase **“the earth”** in the last paragraph mean?
 - A. the people
 - B. the ground
 - C. the tower
 - D. the world
7. Local people on Tanna Island and visitors _____.
 - A. have surfed the volcano for centuries
 - B. have recently surfed the volcano
 - C. come to see the volcano erupt every day
 - D. have never tried any extreme sport
8. How are volcano surfing and land diving similar?
 - A. They are both old sports.
 - B. Both men and women do them.
 - C. They are both done on Tanna Island.
 - D. They are both extreme activities.

VI. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question.

Mystery on Everest

Were Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay really the first people to reach the top of Mount Everest? Some believe British climbers George Mallory and Andrew Irvine reached

the summit before them in June 1924. Unfortunately, this is hard to prove because both men



vanished on the mountain.



In 1999, a team of climbers visited Everest, hoping to solve this mystery. Near Everest First Step, on the way to the summit, the team found Mallory's oxygen tank - evidence that he and Irvine were near the top. Close by, a member of the team, Conrad Anker, discovered Mallory's body.

In addition, when the team examined Mallory's body, they found items like a knife and matches, but no photos. Why is this significant? Mallory carried a photo of his wife with him. He planned to leave **it** at the top of Everest, if he reached the summit.

Did Mallory and Irvine achieve their goal and reach the top? Probably not, says Anker. Mallory and Irvine were last seen near Everest's Second Step. This is a 27-metre wall of rock. Climbing this section of Everest is extremely difficult, even with modern climbing equipment. Without the right tools, it is doubtful Mallory and Irvine were able to proceed to the top.

Mallory and Irvine were near the summit late in the day. Climbers who reach the summit at this time need to camp at the top. If you do this, it is common to suffer from frostbite. But



Mallory's body had no sign of frostbite.

So what happened to Mallory and Irvine? Anker thinks they probably **turned back** just after the First Step. When Mallory was going down, perhaps he accidentally fell. Irvine's

body has never been found. Whatever happened, they will always be remembered as early Everest heroes.

- The reading is mainly about two climbers who _____.
 A. solved a mystery about Everest B. vanished on Everest
 C. recreated Hillary and Norgay's climb D. invented new climbing tools
- Which statement is true?
 A. Mallory's body showed signs of frostbite.
 B. Conrad Anker's team found two bodies on Everest.
 C. Mallory and Irvine were near the top of Everest in the morning.
 D. Anker's team found some of Mallory's items on the mountain.
- The purpose of the second and third paragraphs is to give reasons why _____.
 A. Mallory may have reached the top
 B. Mallory probably didn't reach the top
 C. Mallory brought an oxygen tank
 D. the body was not Mallory's
- What does the word "it" in paragraph 3 refer to?
 A. the body B. the oxygen tank
 C. the summit D. the picture
- Where were Mallory and Irvine last seen?
 A. at a camp near the bottom of the mountain
 B. at the top of Everest
 C. just below the First Step
 D. just below the Second Step
- If Mallory and Irvine "turned back" (in the last paragraph), they _____.
 A. stopped and went down B. went around
 C. tried to walk up D. stayed in one place on
- All of the following are true about Mallory EXCEPT that _____.
 A. he had modern climbing equipment
 B. his body was found near the First Step
 C. some items were found near his body
 D. he carried his wife's picture with him
- Which statement would Conrad Anker probably agree with?
 A. Mallory and Irvine definitely reached the top of Everest.
 B. Mallory and Irvine never got close to the summit.
 C. Mallory and Irvine got close, but didn't reach the top.
 D. Irvine probably reached the top, but not Mallory

Pronunciation: Stress in verbs

I. Put the words below in the correct column according to their stress pattern.

listen compete prefer cancel perform
 dislike reply review harvest achieve
 explore invent argue answer react

Stress on 1 st syllable	Stress on 2 nd syllable
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

II. Put the verbs into the correct column according to the stress pattern.

entertain recommend visualise examine motivate
 imagine understand volunteer accomplish abolish
 advocate recycle discover register exercise
 advertise educate sacrifice encounter disappear

Stress on 1 st syllable	Stress on 2 nd syllable	Stress on 3 rd syllable
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

2E. Speaking

• Everyday English

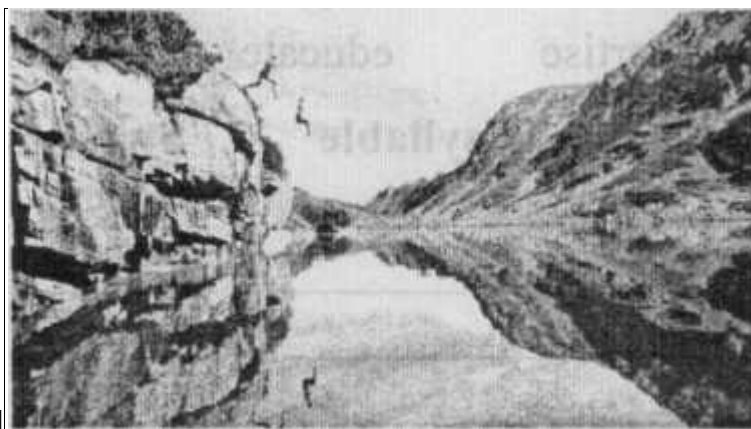
I. Choose the correct response.

1. **A:** When I was young, I used to fly the kites in the field.
2. **A:** We went to a small theme park, and played paintballing.
3. **A:** Look! In the photo, he encountered a shark!
4. **A:** Here's the photo of the man who first completed the marathon.
5. **A:** Here's the photo of my hiking trip in Cat Tien National Park.
6. **A:** Your brother took part in a race yesterday, and he came first.
7. **A:** My aunt Lan likes extreme sports.
8. **A:** Judging by her expression, I'd say Jane enjoyed her first experience of BASE jumping.
9. **A:** You like extreme sports, don't you?
10. **A:** Why do you practise that sport?

- B:** a/ Probably you felt very happy.
b/ Do you think it's a terrible thing?
- B:** a/ And you were feeling terrified?
b/ And you felt very excited?
- B:** a/ I expect he felt very excited.
b/ He was probably very shocked.
- B:** a/ I think he was very well-prepared for it.
b/ Judging his expression, he was relaxed.
- B:** a/ You looked very bored!
b/ Wow! How interesting!
- B:** a/ Really? I guess he's very fit.
b/ But maybe he felt very nervous.
- B:** a/ I guess she enjoys challenges.
b/ It's a bad thing to do dangerous sports.
- B:** a/ Yeah, I could see it on her face.
b/ Right. She looked terrified.
- B:** a/ Oh, because they're dangerous.
b/ Of course, they're very exciting.
- B:** a/ Its excitement makes me do it.
b/ Its excitement makes me unwilling to do it.

• **Photo description**

II. Complete the dialogue with the phrases below. There is one extra that you do not need.



- A. feel scared
- B. wearing a life jacket
- C. some training and experience
- D. still and blue
- E. a bit dangerous
- F. very excited and relaxed
- G. stands on end

Nick Wow. The photo is fantastic. Where was it taken, Phong?

Phong It's the photo that my dad took during his holiday in the northern Viet Nam.

Nick The cliffs are steep, and the lake is calm, not moving.

Phong You're right. The water of the lake is ¹_____.

Nick They jump from the top of the cliffs. They're probably feeling

_____.

Phong If I were them, I'd ³ _____., and my hair ⁴ _____.

Nick It looks like that they've had ⁵ _____.

Phong I think so. If we don't have any experience, it will be ⁶ _____.

III. Complete the dialogue with the phrases below. There is one extra that you do not need.



- A. help each other when there is an accident
- B. wearing wool caps, gloves, boots and heavy backpacks
- C. carry enough tools, first-aid kits, some drink and food
- D. feeling very excited and delighted
- E. but maybe a bit scared and shocked
- F. don't feel so cold
- G. lucky to have the nice weather like that

Anna Look at the picture in the magazine. Some people are skiing in the sun.

Mai It looks very wonderful. Skiing in the sun, so we ¹ _____.

Anna That's right. I expect they're ² _____, because the weather is fine.

Mai They're ³ _____. All of them are carrying a lot.

Anna Exactly. Besides the skis, they are ⁴ _____.

Mai I think they have to ⁵ _____.

Anna Skiing is a bit risky, so people should go skiing in a group, and they can ⁶ _____.

Mai We don't have any opportunities to go skiing in Viet Nam because there is no snow and ice.

IV. Look at the picture, and the prompts below in order to complete the dialogue.



- they / go hiking / forest / see the panorama
- feel very happy / achieve goal of the trip
- walk a long distance / get there
- feel excited / see the view of the sea
- girl / a little bit tired / relax and enjoy the view
- suggestion for the group: go hiking at Nam Cat Tien National Park / this weekend

A Look at the picture in the magazine. The two teenagers are on the edge of the high cliff.

B Maybe they ¹ _____, and at last ² _____

A I expect ³ _____ because ⁴ _____

B I think so. They have ⁵ _____.

A The boy and the girl are probably ⁶ _____ because they can ⁷ _____. It is very fantastic.

B The girl ⁸ _____. She's sitting on the edge of the cliff ⁹ _____.

A Why don't we go hiking this weekend?

B Let's have a discussion with our group. I think ¹⁰ _____.

A Great idea. I think all members all members of the group will agree and set off this weekend.

2F. Writing

• An invitation

Read the email, and do the tasks that follow.

Dear Phong,

Thanks for your email. It's great that you're planning to visit us next month.

As soon as term finishes, I'm going camping in the forest with my dad and my brother. We're planning to be away for three or four days. I really want to go fishing a few times, and while we're there, I'm hoping to catch some fish to eat in the evenings. After we get back, I'll be working in my uncle's cafe for a few days over Easter.

You could visit any time during the last week of the holiday. I'll re-taking a couple of exams next term, so I need to do some revision before I go back to school. But I reckon I'll be able to work when you're here.

I'd be grateful if you could confirm the dates of your visit as soon as possible. I won't make any more plans until I hear from you!

All the best,

Nick

Task 1. Why is Nick writing to Phong?

Task 2. Find four different activities that Nick is planning to do during the Easter holiday? What tenses does he use in his email?

Task 3. Find one sentence that is too formal, and rewrite it in a more informal style.

REVIEW UNIT 2

Vocabulary

I. Complete the sentences with the words below.

cliffs waterfalls shore ocean
desert cave forest volcano

- During the day, the temperature in the _____ can reach 50°C, but at night it sometimes falls to below 0°C.
- You can collect seashells from the _____, but you can't take coral pieces.
- The _____ are very high and it's dangerous to walk too close to the edge.
- When the _____ erupted in the past, it destroyed the whole nearby town.
- Angel Falls in Venezuela is the highest _____ in the world.
- 'What is the deepest _____ in the world?' - I think it's the Pacific.'
- It was a bright day in June, but inside the _____ it was very dark and cold.
- Some of the trees in the _____ are over one thousand years old.

II. Choose the correct words.

- Go **past** / **on** / **after** the school.
- Just **follow** / **along** / **across** the path across the field.

3. Turn **in** / **to** / **onto** the lane and then go straight.
4. I saw Tom running **at** / **straight** / **along** Kings Road.
5. Turn **in** / **Ø** / **up** right at the church and you'll see the cottage.
6. Go **at** / **through** / **over** the gate and park your car next to the house.

III. Underline the correct prepositions. Where no word is necessary, choose Ø.

1. For the police station, go straight **in** / **over** / **on** and you can't miss it.
2. Go **Ø** / **for** / **along** the main road until you see the sports field.
3. To reach the train station, you need to go **up** / **through** / **in** the centre of town.
4. Keep going **Ø** / **on** / **by** until you reach the corner of King's Road.
5. You'll find the bar **up** / **at** / **of** the corner.
6. Walk for two minutes and you'll see the school **in front of** / **by** / **to** you.
7. Take **to** / **Ø** / **on** the second left after the library and you'll see my house.
8. For the post office, go **past** / **through** / **on** the turning for the station.

IV. Replace the underlined words with suitable extreme adjectives.

We're camping in a ¹very small tent in a ²very big field. The weather is very cold, especially at night. Last night, I was ³very scared - there were so many strange noises! It really is a ⁴very bad holiday.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Grammar

V. Makes sentences or questions in the past continuous using these words.

1. it / rain / 8 o'clock / this morning

2. you / wait for / your parents / after school this morning?

3. he / practise / badminton / in the garden / at 4 p.m.

4. people / cheer / during the match yesterday

5. I / not have / a lesson / when you phoned me

VI. Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

1. Maria _____ (surf) when she _____ (see) a shark near the beach.
2. It _____ (not rain) so we _____ (play) volleyball in the park.
3. The Los Angeles Lakers _____ (score) 30 points in the last 10 minutes, but they _____ (not win) the game.
4. She _____ (break) her leg when she _____ (ski).
5. The motorcyclist _____ (put on) his helmet and _____ (get on) the motorbike.
6. The goalie _____ (catch) the ball and _____ (throw) it to the defender.
7. My dad _____ (get) home while I _____ (watch) a football match on TV.
8. The referee _____ (stop) the match because it _____ (snow).

VII. Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

I think I have been very lucky in my life so far, because I have travelled a lot since I ¹ _____ (leave) my own country, Canada, in the late 1970s. In the 1980s, I ² _____ (travel) a lot in South America, but I would say that my favourite part of the

world is the Indian subcontinent. I ³ _____ (also spend) long periods of time on my own exploring Sri Lanka. Now I have two small sons and so I am not as free to travel for long periods as once I was, but we ⁴ _____ (already visit) about 15 countries together.

I originally ⁵ _____ (come) to Britain to study English literature. After finishing my degree, I ⁶ _____ (find) a job as an editorial assistant in Oxford. Although I am now freelance and live in Cambridge, I do most of my writing for the same publisher who ⁷ _____ (give) me a job more than 20 years ago. At the moment, I ⁸ _____ (write) a book on people who decided to take a gap year and travel. I am trying to describe their experience while they were away and I'm also doing some research on how the gap year ⁹ _____ (change) their lives. I hope the book ¹⁰ _____ (appear) in a couple of months.

Word Skills

VIII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below.

train music attend act assist

1. There are three _____ in their family. They all played instruments when they were four years old.
2. The farm shop is looking for a new _____.
3. She's a very good _____ and has been in many films.
4. She's been a flight _____ for ten years because she loves flying.
5. He's only a _____ at the moment but he should get a full-time job with the company in two months.

IX. Complete the sentences with the nouns formed from the verbs below, using an appropriate suffix.

acknowledge exist achieve involve
explain prefer manage reside

1. Make a list of your _____ with your first choice at the top of the list.
2. He said that climbing to the top of Mount Everest had been his greatest _____.
3. They live in London but they have a summer _____ on the south coast of France.
4. They gave me a long _____ on how it works but I still don't understand how to use it.
5. The workers talked to _____ about more pay but they still haven't come to an agreement.
6. Please send me a(n) _____ when you received the parcel.
7. They deny any _____ in the robbery and say they were at the cinema at that time.
8. Since the _____ of the Internet, life has become more convenient for millions of people.

Use of English

X. Complete the text. Use one word only for each gap.

Hi Jack,

Do you have any ¹ _____ for the summer holidays? If not, do you like joining me and my parents at Centre Parcs? We're going to go to the one in Sherwood Forest _____ a week in August. If there are four of us, we can ³ _____ in one of the new Treehouses - they look really cool. We could ⁴ _____ computer games in the special Games room and ⁵ _____ barbecues on the balcony. Or we could go for a bike ⁶ _____ in the forest and do lots of other outdoor ⁷ _____. If you're free, ⁸ _____ don't you come with us? It would be really great ⁹ _____. But, if you can't do it, no problem. Let me ¹⁰ _____!

Reading

XI. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Brita Harding is a scientist and she's been in Antarctica for five weeks. She is working in a small building called Scott's Hut and helping to preserve it. The British explorer Captain Robert Scott used the hut as a base camp in 1911.

'The Antarctica is the driest, coldest and windiest continent in the world. It's dark for six months of the year and not many animals live here, apart from penguins. There are no native people like the Inuits, and tourists never **stop off** to explore. It's easy to understand why. It isn't the best place to live and work and it's freezing at the moment - we've had temperatures of -73°C since Monday!

Every day, I **go down** to Ross Island and work in Scott's Hut with other scientists. Inside there are books, wooden skis, biscuits, penguins' eggs and many other interesting things. All these things have been here for a hundred years and they're completely frozen. That's why we want to save the hut - it brings Scott's expedition to life!

The race to the South Pole is a famous story. Captain Scott and a Norwegian explorer Roald Amundsen both wanted to get there first. They both prepared for many months, but in the end their expeditions were very different: Amundsen used dogs to pull his sleds and Scott had motorized sleds and horses. Amundsen had good weather during his expedition, but Scott had bad weather. When Scott's team **set out** from the hut on 1 November 1911, there were terrible snow storms and the sleds **broke down**. After a few weeks, the horses died and most of his team **turned back**. In the end, only five men **carried on** to the South Pole: Scott, Oates, Evans, Bowers and Wilson.

On 17 January 1912, Scott's team reached the Pole and **came across** the Norwegian flag - Amundsen's team were there before them and were already racing back to tell the world. Tired and disappointed, Scott made his way back home, but the return journey was a nightmare. They ran out of food and got lost in snowstorms; then on 17 February, Evans had a bad fall and died. A month later, Oates walked into a snow storm and disappeared. Scott, Bowers and Wilson stayed in the tent for two more weeks. Sadly, the storm didn't stop, so they died. They were only eighteen kilometres from a supply of food.

In Scott's hut, there is a pair of old explorer's boots. Scott wore these boots for years and they are dirty and broken, but they're very special, too. They tell us Scott's story - that he was hard-working, ambitious and determined, and that he pushed himself to the limit. Although the journey was terrible and terrifying, Scott never **gave up**, and that's an amazing achievement.'

Task 1. Answer the questions.

1. What job does Brita do?

2. How was Amundsen's expedition different from Scott's?

3. Why did most of Scott's team go back?

4. Why was Scott disappointed when he got to the South Pole?

5. What problems did he experience on the way back?

6. What makes Scott's boots special?

7. Why does Brita think Scott's story is an inspiration?

Task 2. Read sentences 1-8, and replace the words in italics with the correct bold phrasal verbs in the text.

1. Last August we went on a road trip. The first day of the holiday, we *began our journey* from home.

2. After a few kilometres, we decided to *stop for a short time* and have breakfast at a small cafe.

3. We were there for an hour, then we *continued* with our journey.

4. Unfortunately, it started to rain. Then we *travelled down* the wrong road and got lost.

5. Later, things got worse and the car *stopped working*. Dad's mobile phone stopped working, too.

6. We spent half an hour repairing the car, but in the end we *stopped trying*.

7. We decided to *go in the opposite direction* and go home, so we got out of the car and started walking.

8. We didn't *meet or find* any other cars or people all the way home.

Progress Test 1 (Units 1-2)

Vocabulary

I. Choose the best answers.

- He was very _____ when he didn't get the job.
A. jealous B. nervous C. disappointed
- Peter was _____ to find his wallet in the cupboard.
A. relieved B. disappointed C. upset
- Jane gets _____ when Bill talks to another girl.
A. guilty B. jealous C. scared
- I'm always _____ when my friends argue in a cafe where there are lots of people.
A. nervous B. bored C. embarrassed

5. Jack was _____ when he realised that someone has stolen his laptop.

A. shocked B. guilty C. excited

II. Complete the sentences with the below.

jealous relieved irritating guilty disappointment

1. She feels _____ because she broke her friend's laptop.
2. I was so _____ to pass the exam. I really thought I'd failed.
3. Does your brother or sister get _____ if you get a bigger present from your parents on your birthday?
4. We lost the game. What a(n) _____!
5. It's _____ if someone interrupts you while you're working.

Grammar

III. Complete the text with the affirmative or negative past simple of the verbs given below.

go (x2) hear know leave reply say sound
 Lan¹ _____ to school yesterday because she wasn't feeling well. Her parents² _____ the house at 7a.m and³ _____ to work. Lan was reading a book in bed when she⁴ _____ a loud noise downstairs. It⁵ _____ like it was in the kitchen. Lan⁶ _____ what to do. Finally, she⁷ _____ loudly, 'Hello. Who's there?' Nobody⁸ _____.

IV. Complete the sentences with the past simple or the past continuous of the verbs in brackets.

1. I was surfing the internet when I _____ your email. (get)
2. It _____ when I woke up this morning. (rain)
3. Someone _____ in our seats when we got on the train. (sit)
4. Nick _____ along the road when he sprained his ankle. (run)
5. My sister lost her bag while she _____ round the city. (travel)
6. _____ at two o'clock this morning? (you/sleep)

V. Match the beginnings (1-5) with the halves (A-E), and complete the sentences in the past simple or the past continuous. Write the answer in each blank.

1. I first met her two years ago	_____ A. when the phone (ring) _____.
2. When we (talk) _____ noisily,	_____ B. while many tourists (rush) _____ to the beach.
3. We were watching television	_____ C. our teacher came in.
4. The car was travelling at full speed	_____ D. when we (study) _____ at the middle school.
5. I (watch) _____ TV in my hotel room.	_____ E. when it (reach) _____ the corner.

Word Skills

VI. Complete the phrases with *How* or *What*.

1. _____ fantastic!
2. _____ a shame!
3. _____ a difficult question!
4. _____ exciting!
5. _____ interesting!

Use of English

VII. Complete the text about a stay in Alaska. Use one word only for each gap.

I have been in Alaska¹ _____ about a week now, so I've settled in and I'm doing my volunteer work at the environmental centre. Alaska² _____ really beautiful and the landscape is amazing. I have³ _____ seen any moose yet, or bears, but I think I will sooner see later, because moose walk onto the roads all the time.

⁴ _____ is a festival tomorrow and a midnight baseball game, which I'm ⁵ _____ to participate in.

I'm staying in a log cabin, which is pretty cool. It has a loft and a ladder leading up to it, which makes up for the fact that I have got running water. This is the real Alaskan experience. I was surprised that lots of house here don't have running water or electricity. I ride a bike to and from work ⁶ _____ day. It takes me half ⁷ _____ hour to get there. The camp where I work started two days ⁸ _____. This week I'll be looking ⁹ _____ five-year-old kids. I have to take them to various places and, together with ¹⁰ _____, I learn a lot about the local environment. I am really enjoying my time here, thanks to the people who are so kind.

Reading

VIII. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

A British Tradition

The British tradition of explorers dates back centuries when intrepid men set off across the ocean to discover new lands. The public have always looked up to these explorers as heroes, even if they were unsuccessful. These days, most places in the world have already been discovered, but there are still plenty of remote regions when it's challenging - and at times dangerous - to get about. Ed Stafford, a former British Army captain, has continued the British tradition of exploration. In 2010, he completed a record-breaking journey when he became the first person to trek the entire length of the Amazon River. He started at the source of the river, which is in the mountains of Peru, and finished 859 days and about 7,000 km later on the Atlantic coast of Brazil.

One of the biggest challenges was dealing with wildlife. Stafford and his partner came across electric eels, lethal vipers and giant anacondas. As if that wasn't enough, Stafford suffered an estimated 50,000 mosquito bites and a tropical fly laid its eggs in the skin of Stafford's head. Three months into their grueling journey, Stafford's partner gave up and went home.

But some of the humans he encountered were even more threatening than the wildlife. Stafford had been warned to stay away from certain notorious villages, but on one occasion he was chased by five or six boats full of angry locals. They were armed with guns and bows and arrows. Stafford thought they were going to kill him. But, in fact, the village chief accompanied Stafford for 47 days of the walk and they ended up becoming good friends.

Task 1. Mark the sentences T (true), or F (false).

1. British explorers only become national heroes if they are very successful. _____
2. Ed Stafford's expedition lasted more than two years. _____
3. His route crossed international borders. _____
4. Stafford walked on his own for part of the journey. _____
5. The biggest danger he faced was the wildlife. _____
6. Stafford was injured by some of the locals. _____

Task 2. Match the underlined adjectives in the text with the definitions 1-8.

1. not having success _____
2. causing death _____
3. brave _____
4. well-known, for bad reasons _____
5. appearing dangerous _____
6. difficult _____
7. very tiring _____
8. a long way from other places _____

UNIT 3: On screen

3A. Vocabulary

• Films and TV programmes

I. Complete the definitions with the types of films below.

action films

historical dramas

romantic comedies

science fiction films

war films

1. _____ often show the future. They sometimes include aliens.
2. _____ are love stories that are also funny.
3. _____ are films about soldiers and battles.
4. _____ are fast, exciting films that often contain fights and car chases.
5. _____ show a specific period in the past. You can see how people dressed, spoke and behaved those days.

II. Read the sentences. What types of film are the people talking about?

thriller

war film

science fiction film

western

historical drama

horror film

musical

romantic comedy

1. I liked the songs, and the acting was OK, but the actors couldn't sing. _____
2. I love films about the Wild West, especially ones with cowboys and Indians. _____
3. It was the most exciting and gripping film I've ever seen. You didn't know who the murderer was until the very end. _____
4. I'm really interested in that period of history, but I don't think the film was very accurate, so I didn't enjoy it. _____
5. The special effect were amazing. I almost believe that it was 2050 and people actually lived on the planet Mars. _____
6. It was very funny, and the ending was hilarious. _____
7. It was about the Battle of Britain in 1940. Very exciting, but also quite violent. _____
8. It was probably the scariest ghost story I've ever watched. _____

III. Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1. A(n) _____ film doesn't have real people in it.
2. In a(n) _____ a lot of people usually die because of a terrible event like a war or a conflict.
3. A(n) _____ film is usually about the future.
4. In _____ the actors have to act, sing and dance.
5. A(n) _____ film is about a certain part of America.

IV. Read the sentences, and complete the words.

1. This is a really funny c _ _ _ y with lots of laughs.
2. Many people enjoy watching d _ _ _ _ _ y films about wild animals.
3. My sister is watching a h _ _ _ _ c _ drama about life in the 17th century.
4. If you like to be frightened, watch a h _ _ _ _ film.
5. In a _ _ _ _ _ films like Toy Story the characters are created with computer graphics.
6. My brother is interested in military history and he loves w _ _ f _ _ s.
7. In m _ _ _ _ s the actors have to act, sing and dance.
8. The new t _ _ _ _ r is very exciting and full of surprising events.
9. The w _ _ _ r of the Oscar made a very long speech.
10. The r _ _ _ _ s of the competition were a big surprise this year. No one expected them!

V. Match 1-6 with A-G to make phrases and compound nouns. There is one word A-G you do not need.

1. film A. effects 1. _____

2. special B. scene 2. _____
 3. fight C. industry 3. _____
 4. stunt D. motion 4. _____
 5. slow E. man/woman 5. _____
 6. silent F. silent 6. _____
 G. film

VI. Complete the text about popular types of TV programmes in different countries with the words below. There is one that you do not need.

cartoons chat show news bulletin reality show
 sports coverage sitcoms weather forecast

What People Watch Around the World

In most countries around the world, people enjoy watching TV. However, different types of programmes are popular in different countries. Internationally, the most popular type of programme is the ¹ _____, probably because people like to know what's happening in their country and abroad. But surprisingly, there's a place where the most watched programme is the ² _____. This isn't the UK, even though the climate there is famously poor; it's Japan. More than half of those asked said this was the programme they watched most frequently.

³ _____ is also popular in many countries, though different events are preferred. Some watch football, others baseball or tennis. English football is watched around the world and it's estimated that Manchester United has got 354 million fans worldwide.

Both children and adults enjoy ⁴ _____ like *Tom and Jerry* or *Mickey Mouse*, and in recent years the ⁵ _____, starring ordinary people rather than actors, has become popular everywhere.

Everyone enjoys laughing, and British and American ⁶ _____ are particularly popular. They're exported to many other countries, and often remade with a new cast. For example, *The Office*, originally a British show, has now got American, Canadian, German, Chilean and Swedish versions.

• Adjectives to describe films and TV programmes

VII. Complete the definitions using the adjectives below.

funny boring entertaining gripping moving scary
 violent

1. A(n) _____ film is one that you enjoy watching.
2. A(n) _____ film contains a lot of fighting and blood.
3. A(n) _____ film makes you feel strong emotions.
4. A(n) _____ film makes you laugh.
5. A(n) _____ film makes you frightened.
6. A(n) _____ film is not interesting at all.
7. You can't stop watching a(n) _____ film because it's so exciting.

VIII. Choose an adjective from the list below that best describes the film the people are talking about.

dull entertaining gripping moving
 predictable scary serious violent

1. I knew exactly what was going to happen at the end. _____
2. I've never been so bored in my life! _____
3. The story was fantastic. I couldn't take my eyes off the screen from start to finish.

4. We were crying when we came out of the cinema. _____
5. There was too much fighting and blood. _____
6. There weren't many laughs, but it really made me think. _____

7. The photography and the special effects were amazing. _____

IX. Choose the correct word.

1. I laughed a lot - it's a really **funny** / **scary** film.
2. The story is **funny** / **gripping** - you really want to know what's going to happen.
3. I enjoyed the musical - the songs and the dancing were really **entertaining** / **violent**.
4. The film was really **gripping** / **moving**. It made me cry.
5. I couldn't watch the end of the horror film - it was too **entertaining** / **scary**.
6. The special effects were OK but the story was really **boring** / **gripping**. I fell asleep!
7. I don't like war films. They're too **funny** / **violent**.

X. Complete the sentences with the correct words below.

- entertaining horror gripping violent moving*
1. My mum refuses to watch _____ films because she doesn't like all the fighting.
 2. The film was so _____ that I cried at the end.
 3. I like films that are _____ for the whole family.
 4. _____ films give me bad dreams.
 5. I couldn't switch off the TV because the film was so _____.

• Aspects of films

XI. Match the aspects of films to the definitions.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------|--------------------|-------|
| 1. soundtrack | _____ | 6. blockbuster | _____ |
| 2. screenplay | _____ | 7. set | _____ |
| 3. performances | _____ | 8. special effects | _____ |
| 4. cast | _____ | 9. plot | _____ |
| 5. trailer | _____ | 10. scene | _____ |

- a. a huge popular film
- b. an advert for a film, showing a short part of it
- c. the story of a film - what happens
- d. the music that accompanies a film
- e. one part of a film (in which events happen in the same place)
- f. techniques used for showing difficult or impossible action in a film
- g. a place that is created for shooting a film
- h. the group of actors who appear in a film
- i. the script of a film
- j. the act of playing the characters in a film

XII. Complete the text with eight of the words from Exercise XI.

The First Blockbuster

According to Guinness World Records, the very first Hollywood summer ¹ _____ was *Jaws*, released in 1975. Here are six facts every film fan should know about it.

- The ² _____ was based on the novel by the same name.
- The ³ _____, by composer John Williams, won several awards. The most famous feature is the simple two-note tune played in each ⁴ _____ with a shark attack.
- The ⁵ _____ - mainly robotic sharks - accounted for about one third of the total cost.
- Director Stephen Spielberg didn't want top Hollywood stars in the ⁶ _____, but instead hired less well-known actors, to make the story seem more like real life.
- Many film critics praised Spielberg's skill as a director, and the actors' ⁷ _____.
- *Jaws* was the first motion picture to be shot on the ocean rather than on a ⁸ _____ designed to look like the ocean.

XIII. Complete the sentences with the words below.

audiences awards director documentary drama
film industry film-making full-length screen

1. Walt Disney made the first _____ animated film in 1937.
2. Action films are more exciting when you see them on a big _____ .
3. A _____ needs to have interesting characters and a good story.
4. Sometimes, a film is very popular with _____ but doesn't win any _____ .
5. You can study _____ at some universities in the UK, but you won't necessarily get a job in the _____ when you finish.
6. The famous film _____ , Martin Scorsese made a _____ about the singer, Bob Dylan.

XIV. Complete the sentences with the below. There are two words you do not need.

*actress ceremony director prize results speech
winner*

1. I watched the Oscars _____ on TV, but it was quite boring.
2. Jenny won a(n) _____ for a short story she wrote for a competition.
3. My dad made a(n) _____ at my sister's wedding. He told some jokes.
4. Who was the _____ of the award for Best Actor this year?
5. I got my exam _____ in the post this morning. I passed.

• **Collocations: verb + noun**

XV. Complete the sentences with the below.

*opinion online games benefits grades
research decision concern effect*

1. You'll enjoy all the _____ of being a member when you go to any cinema in our system.
2. The _____ was done by a team of scientists at Oxford University.
3. Tom worked hard and got good _____ at school.
4. Watching violent films will eventually have a(n) _____ on your mental health.
5. He expressed his _____ only when asked.
6. I want to think about it a bit longer before I make a(n) _____ .
7. He was up all night playing _____ .
8. The news about the war in region will cause _____ about the prices of oil.

3B. Grammar

• **Quantity**

I. Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1. I'm going out with _____ friends.
2. We haven't got _____ pets.
3. Have you got _____ homework?
4. I need _____ fresh air.
5. There isn't _____ traffic on the road.
6. Are there _____ fields near your school?

II. Complete the sentences with *a little* or *a few*.

1. I went to the cinema with _____ friends last night.
2. She isn't a vegetarian, but she only eats _____ meat.
3. 'Would you like some pasta?' - 'Just _____ . I'm not very hungry.'
4. I spent _____ time chatting with my uncle.
5. She bought _____ CDs in town.
6. I only recognised _____ people at the party.

III. Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*.

1. There aren't _____ cottages in the village.
2. He doesn't speak _____ Vietnamese.
3. Do you listen to _____ rap music?
4. Has she got _____ friends at school?

5. There aren't _____ street lamps in my street.

6. Hurry up! We haven't got _____ time.

IV. Complete the sentences with *much* or *many* and words below.

countries homework goals money old people traffic

1. I can't go out tonight. Our teacher gave us _____.

2. English is spoken in _____.

3. There are _____ in the town.

4. Did Chelsea score _____ in the match?

5. Sorry, I'm late. There was _____ on the roads.

6. She's always buying expensive clothes. She's got _____.

V. Choose the correct words.

1. We have **much** / **a lot of** / **a little** students at our school this year.

2. **A few** / **Any** / **A little** friends are coming to dinner this evening.

3. I haven't got **some** / **much** / **many** time before I catch the bus.

4. Do you like **some** / **much** / **any** of the songs on their new DVD?

5. Tom can speak **a few** / **a little** / **much** Vietnamese.

6. I haven't seen **much** / **many** / **a few** films this year. Have you?

7. I hope you like black coffee. There isn't **many** / **some** / **any** milk left.

VI. Choose the correct words.

1. I haven't got **some** / **much** / **many** money in my wallet.

2. **A few** / **Any** / **A little** students are helping the teacher carry the books.

3. She hasn't read **much** / **many** / **a few** good books recently.

4. There are **much** / **a lot of** / **a little** bicycles in the school ground this morning.

5. I'm going to the shops. There isn't **many** / **some** / **any** bread or milk for breakfast.

6. Are there **some** / **much** / **any** roadworks in the city centre at the moment?

7. I learned **a few** / **a little** / **much** Japanese when I was on holiday.

• **must**, **mustn't** and **needn't** / **don't have to**

VII. Choose the correct word.

1. You **must** / **mustn't** / **needn't** turn off your mobile in class because you can use it in class.

2. You **must** / **mustn't** / **needn't** have tea. There's coffee too.

3. You **must** / **mustn't** / **needn't** swim in the sea today. There are sharks.

4. You **must** / **mustn't** / **needn't** wear a suit to the wedding. You can wear casual clothes if you prefer.

5. You **must** / **mustn't** / **needn't** use a knife and a fork. It's rude to eat with your fingers.

6. You **must** / **mustn't** / **needn't** use a mobile phone when a plane takes off or lands. It's dangerous.

VIII. Complete the sentences with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

1. You _____ arrive in class on time.

2. You _____ use mobile phones or laptops in this lesson. The teacher will give us all the information.

3. You _____ bring an English dictionary because there are some in the classroom.

4. You _____ leave any money in the classroom.

5. You _____ talk while the teacher is explaining the lessons.

6. You _____ be polite to the teachers.

7. You _____ do your homework on time.

8. You _____ bring sandwiches for lunch. There's a canteen.

9. You _____ go to after-school activities. It's compulsory in this school.

10. You _____ bring your own paper. The school provides it.

IX. Complete the sentences. Use *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

1. We _____ forget Mai's birthday. It's next Friday.

2. You _____ hand in your assignment today. It's due to next Monday.
3. You _____ smoke in restaurants in the UK. It's illegal.
4. You _____ shout! It's impolite to do something like that.
5. You _____ cross the street at the pedestrian crossing.
6. I _____ go to bed late tonight. I'm planning to get up early tomorrow morning.
7. Jane _____ study harder. She's going to fail her exams, if she doesn't.
8. We _____ go shopping this afternoon. The fridge is empty.

X. Match the pairs of sentences.

1. You mustn't eat those mushrooms. _____ A. You're in England.
2. You mustn't swim here. _____ B. They're poisonous.
3. You must pay for those books. _____ C. They'll be fine.
4. You must try on the shirt. _____ D. They aren't free.
5. You must drive on the left. _____ E. The river is dangerous.
6. You mustn't worry about your exams. _____ F. You don't want to buy the wrong size.

XI. Rewrite the sentences using *needn't*.

1. It isn't necessary for you to buy her a present.

2. It isn't necessary for us to arrive so early.

3. It isn't necessary for them to phone me.

4. It isn't necessary for him to wear a suit.

5. It isn't necessary for her to cook dinner for me.

6. It isn't necessary for you to wait for me.

XII. Read the text and complete it with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't* / *don't have to*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Writing a blog is fun and easy, and it can make you money. You ¹ _____ try it! Here's how:

✓ First, decide what you want to write about. It can be anything - technology, fashion, orangutans. But if you want to make money, you ² _____ write about something that interests lots of other people.

✓ Next, you ³ _____ choose a name for your website. You ⁴ _____ use a name that already exist, of course.

✓ Then, you ⁵ _____ set up your blog. This is quick and easy, and you ⁶ _____ pay - there are lots of free blog sites.

✓ Now start writing. You ⁷ _____ write something every day, but try to write at least two blog entries a week.

✓ When you have some interesting content on your blog, you _____ go on social networking sites and tell everyone to come and visit. You can also write articles for other

people's blogs. However, you ⁹ _____ publish the same article on your own blog - that's not allowed. And remember: you ¹⁰ _____ put the details of your own blog at the end, so readers know where to find you.

✓ Now lots of people are reading your blog, so it's time to include some adverts. People ¹¹ _____ read them, but if they choose to click on an advert, you will make some money. I ¹² _____ say, this won't make you rich quickly, but if your blog is good enough, the money will come in the end.

3C. Word Skills

• Negative adjective prefixes

I. Make the adjectives negative by adding the correct prefix: *un-*, *dis-*, *in-* or *im-*.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. lucky _____ | 5. polite _____ |
| 2. comfortable _____ | 6. tolerant _____ |
| 3. honest _____ | 7. loyal _____ |
| 4. fit _____ | 8. tidy _____ |

II. Use the adjectives in Exercise I, with or without their prefixes, to complete the sentences.

1. It was _____ of your friend to say bad things about you when you weren't there.
2. Peter was in a terrible car accident last week. He's _____ to be alive.
3. She's very _____. She wouldn't lie to you.
4. I couldn't sleep because the bed was _____.
5. John's very _____. He goes running every evening.
6. His bedroom is always _____ - he never puts anything away.
7. In many countries it's _____ to start eating before others are ready.
8. We should be _____ of people who have different cultures from us.

III. Which adjective in each group below cannot be used with the negative prefix? Then replace the underlined words with the suitable adjectives.

- a. *un-* happy polite usual
- b. *im-* mature perfect thinkable
- c. *ir-* moral rational responsible
- d. *il-* legal possible literate
- e. *im-* polite usual possible

1. 30% of children under eleven feel sad in school.

-
2. Teenagers today are rude to older people.

-
3. About 6% of the world's children are unable to read or write.

-
4. Teenagers who don't go to school are behaving in a childish way.

-
5. School rules are not correct in every way, but they are important.

-
6. It is not normal for teenagers to commit crimes, says the report.

IV. Complete the sentences with the adjectives with the opposite meaning.

1. An honest person always tells the truth, but a _____ person doesn't.
2. An ambitious person tries very hard to be successful, but an _____ person doesn't.
3. A polite person is never rude, but an _____ person is.
4. A tidy person always puts things away, but an _____ person doesn't.
5. A loyal person is your friend for a long time, but a _____ person is not.
6. A tolerant person listens to other people's opinions, but an _____ person doesn't.
7. An active person gets of a lot of exercise, but an _____ person doesn't.
8. A lucky person usually has good luck, but an _____ person doesn't.

V. Complete the sentences. Use the adjectives below, with or without the prefix un-.

attractive believable certain comfortable fit grateful

1. He's very _____. He could be a model or a film star.
2. She's very _____. She can run 10 kilometres.
3. I can't sleep. This bed is very _____.
4. He's definitely rich. I'm _____.
5. England are beating Brazil 8-0. That's _____.
6. Thanks for the present. I'm very _____!

VI. Add un-, dis-, im- or in- to these adjectives, and then complete the sentences with them.

honest patient grateful active tidy

1. My brother is so _____. He leaves his clothes all over his bedroom floor.
2. I'm very _____. I always want to know things quickly.
3. He never thanked me for my help. He's so _____.
4. After the accident she was _____ for three months.
5. He lost his job because he was _____.

VII. Add prefixes un-, dis-, im-, under-, mis-, or re- to the words in bold to complete the sentences.

1. I'm afraid to _____ **agree**. I don't think that's right at all.
2. Discipline is very important to us. We don't like the children to _____ **obey** the teacher.
3. I _____ **understood** his directions and got completely lost.
4. Shall I throw these boxes away or can we _____ **use** them for something else?
5. It's very _____ **usual** situations. Nothing like this has happened before.
6. I _____ **estimated** how long the journey would take. It took an hour longer than I expected.
7. The old man walked around the corner and _____ **appeared**. We never saw him again.
8. I don't know how you find anything in this office. It's so _____ **tidy**.
9. He has to _____ **new** his driving licence because it has expired.
10. They use children in their factories, which I find completely _____ **moral**.

3D. Reading

I. Read the text. Match the sentences A-F with the gaps 1-5 in the text. There is one extra sentence you do not need.

- A. In the second half of the century, different forms of entertainment became popular.
 B. There is something special about seeing a film in the cinema.
 C. The ratings system helps parents choose which films are suitable for children.
 D. In the first half of the twentieth century, going to the cinema was the most popular form of entertainment.
 E. However, in the twenty-first century, cinemas are fighting back!
 F. Cinema venues have also changed in the last few years.

The Death of the Cinema?

¹ _____ In the 1940s thirty million people in Britain went to the cinema regularly. It wasn't expensive. Ordinary working people could afford it and it was a treat for children. It was also the place to see the news, hundreds of cinemas opened up all over Britain.

² _____ By the 1960s more and more homes had televisions, and cinemas started to close. In the 1980s people watched videos. Then came satellite TV, the Internet and computer games. By the end of the twentieth century, fewer and fewer people went to the cinema.

³ _____ New technology like 3D means that cinemas can offer something most people can't get at home. In 2007 the number of people going to the cinema started to go up again. When the 3D film *Avatar* came out in 2009, it broke records - millions of people went to see it at the cinema.

⁴ _____ Now there are huge multiplex cinemas showing ten different movies, there are drive-in cinemas and open-air screens in parks. Over 100 years after the first movie theatres in America opened, the cinema is still evolving.

⁵ _____ It is true that you can watch a film on a bus on your smartphone, on a screen that is smaller than your hand. But the cinema experience, with friends, popcorn and ice cream is a tradition we have learned to love. It seems the cinema will be around a while longer.

II. Read the text and do the tasks that follow.

The Most Famous Bond Villain

Ernst Stavro Blofeld is a fictional character who has appeared in seven James Bond films. Several different actors have played the part. In the earliest films, the audience never sees Blofeld's face - only his hands as they stroke a white Persian cat. We see his face for the



first time in *You Only Live Twice*.

In the films and in the novels, Blofeld is the leader of a terrorist organization, S.P.E.C.T.R.E., which is trying to dominate the world. In the films, we don't learn much about his life; we just know that he is a cold, evil and very powerful man who is an enemy of the British Intelligence Service and in particular James Bond. However, Ian Fleming gives us a lot more information in the novels.

Fleming tells us that Blofeld was born on 28th May, 1908 in Gdynia, Poland. His father was Polish, and his mother was Greek. Blofeld was a student of economics and history at the University of Warsaw, and then studied engineering at the Warsaw Technical Institute. Later, he got a job with the Polish government. In the Second World War, he secretly worked for both sides and after the war, he moved to South America. He started S.P.E.C.T.R.E by bringing together the most violent and dangerous criminals in the world.

Task 1. Answer the questions.

1. In how many Bond films does Blofeld appear?

2. What pet has Blofeld got?

3. In which film do we first see Blofeld's face?

4. What is S.P.E.C.T.R.E trying to do?

5. Where was Blofeld born, according to the novels?

6. In which city did Blofeld study?

7. Which side did Blofeld work for during the Second World War?

8. Where did Blofeld go after the war?

Task 2. Put the events of Blofeld's life in the correct order?

- A. He worked for the Polish government.
- B. He moved to South America.
- C. He studied economics.
- D. He started S.P.E.C.T.R.E.
- E. He worked for both sides in the war.
- F. He studied engineering.

III. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

A Sofia Coppola was born in New York, USA, in 1971 and appeared in her first film, *The Godfather*, in 1972. (She played the part of a baby boy!) As she grew older, she appeared in several other films. However, she was never very successful as an actress, and in 1990 she received two joke awards called 'Razzies', one for Worst New Star and one for



Worst Supporting Actress.

B Today, Sofia is better-known (and more successful) as a director. She wrote and directed a short film in 1998 and made her first full-length film, *The Virgin Suicides*, in 1999. That year, she won an MTV Movie Award for Best New Film-maker. In 2003, she wrote and directed her most successful film, *Lost In Translation*, and won an Academy Award for the script.

C Sofia grew up surrounded by people from the film industry because she is the daughter of the famous film director, Francis Ford Coppola. She is also the cousin of actor Nicolas Cage. In 1999, she married film director Spike Jonze but the marriage ended in 2003. Many people in Hollywood believes she is now in a relationship with Quentin Tarantino - another famous director.

Task 1. Choose the best answer.

- As an actress, Sofia's first part was _____.
A. as a boy B. as a young girl in *The Godfather*
C. in the worst film of 1990 D. as a young woman
- She received two 'Razzies' because _____.
A. she was in several films B. she wasn't a very good actress
C. she was very young D. she was a new star
- The Virgin Suicides* was the name of Sofia's _____.
A. first film B. first full-length film
C. short film D. most successful film
- She won an Academy Award as _____.
A. a writer B. an actress C. a director D. a joke
- Two members of Sofia's family are big names in the film industry: her _____.
A. father and daughter B. brother and sister
C. husband and mother D. father and cousin

Task 2. What happened in Sofia Coppola's life on these dates?

1971

1972

1990

1998

1999

and

2003

and

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

The Story of a Success

Many European film directors have gone to Hollywood hoping to make their mark in the American film industry, but few have had as much success there as the Czech-born film director Milos Forman.

Forman was born in 1932 in Caslav, in what is now the Czech Republic. ¹ _____ Milos never saw his parents again: they both died in concentration camps, leaving him an orphan at the age of 12. Milos and his brother were brought up by one of their uncles.



After the war, Forman became fascinated by film and theatre. ² _____ He started out in the film industry by directing television documentaries before moving gradually into drama.

He gained international recognition for *Black Peter* (1964) and was soon the leading figure in the 'golden age' of Czech cinema.

In 1967 he made his first trip to the United States, and the following year went to Paris to organise the production of his first American film, *Taking Off*.³ _____ Not wanting to return to Czechoslovakia, Forman stayed in Paris until August 1969, when he moved to New York.

Taking Off, Forman's first English-language film, appeared in 1971. The film was a critical success and won a number of awards.⁴ _____ The film became the first film for forty years to win Oscars in all five major categories - Best Film, Best Actor, Best Actress, Best Screenplay, and Best Director for Forman. In 1984, Forman returned to Prague for the first time in 16 years to film scenes for *Amadeus*, which tells the life-story of the composer, Mozart.⁵ _____ Forman's bitter experiences have had a profound influence on his work.⁶ _____ Naturally, Forman is always on the side of the individual.

Task 1. Read the text quickly, and answer the questions.

1. What's the man's name?

2. Where is he from?

3. Which country did he move to?

4. What are the names of three of his films?

Task 2. Complete the missing sentences in the text with the ones below. There is one extra sentence.

A. However, his big breakthrough came in 1975 when he directed *One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest*.

B. He has always had to struggle to survive, and his most interesting and successful films all explore the theme of the lone individual against a hostile establishment.

C. His father, who was Jewish, and his mother were arrested by the Nazis during the occupation of Czechoslovakia during the Second World War.

D. The film was another huge success, winning eight Oscars, including another Best Director for Forman.

E. He organised a drama club at school and went on to study screen-writing at the Film Institute at the University of Prague.

F. In spite of this, he returned to Czechoslovakia the following year.

G. While he was there, Russia and its Warsaw Pact allies invaded Czechoslovakia.

Task 3. Match the underlined words in the text with the definitions below.

a. films that give true information _____

b. prizes _____

c. the words and directions that are written for a film _____

d. short part of a film, in which the action usually happens in one place _____

e. people who direct the making of films _____

f. a film that tells a fictional story _____

g. all the companies and studios that make films _____

V. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

REVIEW: Noor

Like many modern TV programmes, *Noor* began its life on TV screens in one country, but when it became popular there, other countries started to show an interest in it.

The programme began in Turkey, and in Turkish it was called *Gumus*. It is about a poor young woman called Gumus and how she marries Mehmet from a rich family.

Large numbers of people followed their story on Turkish TV. The main actors, Songul Oden and Kivanc Tatlitug, became famous across the country. The story has many dramatic ups and downs. The young people live with Mehmet's family, in ¹ _____, in a big, beautiful house by the sea. Mehmet's family has some interesting people in it, including his mother - who really hates Gumus. At first, Mehmet doesn't truly love Gumus, but soon things start to change and a love story begins.

Arabic TV companies saw *Gumus*, and wanted to ² _____ it in Arabic. So, in Arabic, Gumus became Noor, and Mehmet became Muhannad. Soon people were watching *Noor* across the Arab World. At one point, between three and four million people in Saudi Arabia were watching the programme every day. Around 85 million people watched the last episode in Arab countries. In this last episode, the story moved forwards 14 years and showed what happened to all the characters.

People were ³ _____ by the influence of the show across the region. In some countries, the name Noor and Muhannad became more popular because of the series. Clothes stores sold dresses like the ones worn by Noor, and there was an increase in the number of Arab tourists to Turkey.

The programme has also helped the ⁴ _____ of the Turkish TV industry and there is now a lot of interest in other programmes from the country.

Task 1. Complete the text with four of the words below.

afford *sweat* *broadcast* *ordinary*
luxury *development* *pale* *astonished*

Task 2. What is the text about? Choose the correct answer.

- A. the first episode of *Noor*
- B. a documentary about the show *Noor*
- C. the popular TV programme *Noor*

Task 3. Read the text again. Complete the sentences with words from the text.

1. The first name of the programme was _____.
2. People could first watch the programme on TV in _____.
3. After a short time, Mehmet begins to _____ Gumus.
4. Soon, people who understood _____ could enjoy the show, too.
5. At the end, people could learn what happened to the _____ after 14 years.
6. The programme has been very important for the TV _____ in Turkey.

Task 4. Correct the mistakes and rewrite the sentences.

1. *Noor* is a famous TV show which first started in Egypt.

2. *Noor* is about an older woman who marries a man from a poor Turkish family.

3. *Noor* is a detective story which has many ups and downs.

4. More than 100 million people watched the last episode of *Noor*.

5. Nobody wanted to visit Turkey when they saw *Noor*.

Task 5. Answer the questions.

1. How is *Noor* similar to many modern TV programmes?

2. How do we know from the text that the series was extremely popular across the Arab world?

3. Give three examples of the influence of *Noor*.

4. Why do you think so many people watch the programmes like *Noor*?

VI. Read the text, and choose the correct answers.

An Actor Prepares

'People often ask me how I prepare for a new part and I find this a really difficult question. An actor needs to know a lot about different sorts of people and different types of personalities. Imagine you have to play the part of someone who is ambitious and intolerant. Perhaps you aren't like this but you must understand how people feel and behave when they are. So, I watch people all the time, especially when I'm preparing for a new part.

For me, when I'm acting the costume is also very important to all of us. They tell other people a lot about who we are and who we aren't. Different clothes can change our behavior. Think about it. When you put on party clothes, work clothes or sports clothes you change a little. For example, in smart, expensive clothes you look good, you feel good and you are more confident. That's why costume is important for me when I'm acting. If I put on clothes of an old, poor homeless woman, I feel more like her. The moment I put on the costume I change, and for a short time I am another person.' **Kelly**

1. Actors have to ____.

- A. answer a lot of questions B. prepare for a long time
C. show their personalities D. be very ambitious

2. Kelly watches people a lot because she ____.

- A. is interested in people
B. wants to learn how different people behave
C. is very patient

D. needs to understand why people are different

3. The clothes we wear ____.

- A. are important to us B. must be attractive
C. show how rich we are D. tell people different things about us

4. When we wear different clothes ____.

- A. we sometimes feel different B. it can make us nicer people

- C. our behavior always stays the same D. people notice us more
5. According to the text, _____.
 A. Kelly often plays an old woman
 B. Kelly likes pretending to be an old woman
 C. costumes help Kelly play a part
 D. Kelly likes choosing costumes

VI. Read the text, and choose the correct answers.

The BAFTA As or the Oscars?

Do you know anything about the BAFTA awards? It's not surprising if you don't, because many people see the awards as just a practice for the Oscars. However, BAFTA (British Academy of Film and Television) started in 1947 and their award ceremony was first held in 1948. The awards were not shown on television until 1967, but since then more and more people have started to watch. In 2011 the viewing figures were up to 5.3 million, and the awards are now a well-known event in the film industry calendar.

The BAFTA awards ceremony celebrates the best of film and television every year. Although it has some special categories just for British films, it also awards prizes to many foreign films and programmes (usually American). When the award ceremony began in 1948, there was just one category and one prize - for best film. Nowadays there are over 25 award categories, including awards for current affairs programmes and sports programmes, as well as the usual awards for best actor and actress.

Awards are usually presented by actors or actresses, but in the past, members of the British royal family have also presented them. The prize is a golden mask statue. One of the eyes in the mask is missing, which makes it look quite strange. The BAFTA awards ceremony used to happen in April or March, but in 2002 they changed the date to February to make sure that the ceremony came before the Oscars. The Oscars now often nominate the same films, actors and actresses for prizes (even though the same actors and actresses don't always win). This happens so often that the BAFTAs are now seen as a good way to predict Oscar nominations. So if you are interested in the Oscars, it is worth watching the BAFTAs first.

1. The BAFTA awards started in _____.
 A. 1947 B. 1948 C. 1967 D. 2002
2. The BAFTA awards honour _____.
 A. international television and drama B. mostly foreign productions
 C. only the British film industry D. only a few categories
3. The BAFTA award prize _____.
 A. is a statue of the Royal family
 B. is a different design every year
 C. is made out of gold
 D. is always presented by an actor or actress
4. BAFTA changed the date of the awards ceremony _____.
 A. to be closer to the Oscars ceremony
 B. to be earlier than the Oscars ceremony
 C. to the same month as the Oscars
 D. to come later in the year than the Oscars
5. Watching the BAFTAs is a good way _____.
 A. to avoid watching the Oscars
 B. to see who will win an Oscar
 C. to see who will present the Oscars
 D. to see who might be nominated for an Oscar

VII. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Unexpected Movie Successes

What makes a movie great? The secret to success may be just that: a secret.

1 _____

When we see an amazing movie, it's easy to imagine that, from the very start, the people who made ¹it knew they were making something great. Surely they could tell the plot was perfect and the relationship between the actors was powerful? However, the truth is often very different. Some of the most popular and award-winning movies ever made showed no signs of ²their future greatness at the time they were being produced. I'd like to look at three of ³them.

2 _____

Star Wars is now among the most popular movie businesses of all time, but when it first came out in 1977, theaters weren't excited about showing ⁴it. 20th Century Fox, the production company that paid for the movie, hadn't given director George Lucas much money to make it. They were worried that he didn't have enough experience as a writer or



director, and his work wasn't taken seriously. Most people in the movie business - including ⁵those in the production company - didn't think it would succeed. However, *Star Wars* was released in a relatively small number of cinemas across the US with very little advertising. Within days, mostly through word of mouth, the surprise success's popularity exploded, breaking box-office records and making *Star Wars* one of the first Hollywood blockbusters.

3 _____

Documentary director Malik Bendjelloul started making *Searching For Sugar Man* using very old-fashioned, non-professional 8-millimeter movie equipment. He wanted to create stylized shots for his movie to create the feeling of past times. The movie is about Malik's effort to find a singer who had been very popular decades before, and then disappeared. When he ran out of money for the project, but hadn't completed the work, he turned to his smartphone, using an app called 8mm Vintage Camera. The visionary director eventually

finished the movie and released it in 2012 at the Sundance Film Festival, where it



immediately picked up two awards. In 2013, ⁶it won a UK BAFTA Award for Best Documentary, and two weeks later took the award for Best Documentary Feature at the American Academy Awards.

4

The year 2000 movie *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* won more than 40 awards, and was nominated for an Academy Awards for Best Picture. The movie's huge success in the USA came as a huge surprise. The language of the cinematic masterpiece is Chinese, and usually foreign-language movies in the USA are shown in just a few theaters in the biggest cities. However, *Crouching Tiger* was such an instant success with audiences that it was eventually shown on 1,700 screens around the country. While foreign-language movies are often seen in



the USA as 'art' movies, ⁷this was so much more: a martial arts thriller, a love story, and an action film - all set in a beautiful Chinese landscape. There was something in it for everyone.

Task 1. Match headings A-E to the correct paragraphs 1-4. There is one extra heading.

- A. The movie that was partly shot on an iPhone
- B. They make it look easy
- C. A movie with no people in it
- D. The unknown and inexperienced director
- E. The foreign-language movie

Task 2. Read the text again, and choose the correct answers.

1. What does the author say about great movies?
 - A. All award-winning movies have certain elements that filmmakers must include.
 - B. All of the best movies have already been made - there are no new ideas.
 - C. For a movie to be truly great, the story must in some way feel like the truth.
 - D. When a movie is being made, it isn't easy to know whether or not it will be a success.
2. How did 20th Century Fox launch *Star Wars*?
 - A. They put it in hundreds of theaters on the day it was released.
 - B. They didn't put it in very many theaters, but people who saw it talked about it.
 - C. They advertised it heavily.
 - D. They encouraged people to see it by making tickets cheaper than usual.
3. Why did Malik Bendjelloul shoot part of his movie on an iPhone?
 - A. The equipment he was using didn't create the right style.
 - B. His 8-milimeter equipment broke.
 - C. It was all he could afford to do.
 - D. He wanted to win an award.
4. What feature of *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* made it a surprise success?
 - A. The screenplay was written in Chinese.
 - B. The special effects weren't very good.
 - C. The movie was suitable for all ages.
 - D. The cast wasn't famous.
5. Which statement best summarizes the text?
 - A. *Star Wars*, *Searching For Sugar Man*, and *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* were successful even though they all faced a lot of technical problems during production.
 - B. The success of each movie was the result of people seeing it and recommending it to their friends.
 - C. There isn't a single formula for producing a successful movie.
 - D. The blogger doesn't believe that the three movies are as good as audiences say they are.

Task 3. We can use pronouns or other references to avoid repetition. What do these words 1-7 refer to?

1. it =
2. there =
3. them =
4. it =
5. those =
6. it =
7. this =

Pronunciation

• **Stress**

I. Put the words below into groups based on the stress.

emotional benefit assume preference imaginative
 embarrassing unrealistic spectacular soundtrack download
 dishonest recommend video dimension violence
 character bulletin fantastic scriptwriter animated

Stress on the 1 st syllable	Stress on the 2 nd syllable	Stress on the 3 rd syllable
--	--	--

• **Consonant clusters**

II. Underline the consonant clusters in the words below, and practise saying the words.

thriller scary exciting puzzle smartphone
 express tasks screen describe anxious

twists action escape slogan gripping

3E. Speaking

• Everyday English

I. Choose the correct response.

1. A: Could you repeat that, please?	B: a/ Yes, I said, 7 o'clock. b/ Thank you.
2. A: Which screen is it?	B: a/ <i>War of the Worlds</i> b/ Screen 2
3. A: Can I have your card number?	B: a/ 03/07 b/ 4657 2192 9383 7126
4. A: What's the expiry date?	B: a/ 04/08 b/ 4637 6273 4824 2784
5. A: Can I book tickets for the U2 concert?	B: a/ That's £50. b/ I'm afraid it's sold out.
6. A: Can I help you?	B: a/ Yes, you can. b/ I'd like tickets for <i>Eclipse</i> .
7. A: What time do you want to see the film?	B: a/ The 8.30 p.m., please. b/ Screen 4, please.
8. A: What can we see after that film?	B: a/ What about the 8.30 showing? b/ What about the 10.30 showing, then?
9. A: How would you like to pay?	B: a/ That's £20, please. b/ By credit card, please.
10. A: Would you like to buy any more tickets?	B: a/ No, just one. b/ Yes, thank you.

• Reaching an agreement

II. Complete the dialogue with the phrases given below.

about this one fancy that might like
not a big fan of recommend that this one

- Mai** Would you like to watch a war film?
Andy No, I'm ¹ _____ war films.
Mai Well, try ² _____. The Adventures of Tintin. The director is Steven Spielberg.
Andy I've seen that.
Mai What ³ _____ ?
Andy I've seen that, too.
Mai If we had Monster House, I'd ⁴ _____. Ah, you ⁵ _____ this one.
Andy Yes. I think I ⁶ _____. When is it on? Let's go together.

III. Complete the dialogue with the phrases / clauses given below.

- A. You might like this
 B. there's no point in watching it
 C. OK, well, try this one
 D. What about this one?
 E. I'm not a big fan of this film
 F. I don't fancy that
 G. I'd only recommend that if
 H. If they had *Avatar*, I'd recommend that

- Tom** Hey, Mai, have you seen any good films recently?
Mai Yes, one or two. Have you?
Tom No. ¹ _____ Is it any good?
Mai ² _____ you really like bad musicals.
Tom No, ³ _____.

Mai ⁴ _____, but I can't see it anywhere.
Tom Yeah, well, ⁵ _____ if it isn't in 3D and I can't do that at home.
Mai No, you're right. It's a great film to see at the cinema. Oh, here you are. ⁶ _____. It's got great special effects.
Tom What's that? *Gravity*? No, ⁷ _____. I prefer a comedy.
Mai A comedy ... er ... ⁸ _____. It's a really funny story. I think you'll like it.
Tom OK, I'll trust you. Thanks, Mai.
Mai No problem. Enjoy it!

• Talking about films

IV. Complete the dialogues with the phrases below.

- a. Cool.
- b. Oh, no. Poor ...
- c. There's some exciting news.
- d. That's fantastic news.
- e. I was just talking to ...
- f. What was a dreadful thing to happen!
- g. Have you heard about...?

Dialogue 1

A ¹ _____ Lucy?
B No, what happened?
A Someone stole her bag yesterday.
B ² _____ Lucy! Was there anything valuable in it?
A Mostly books, her lunch and homework, but she also had her keys in there.
B ³ _____
A Luckily, she had her purse in her pocket.

Dialogue 2

A Hi, Nick. ⁴ _____ You won't believe this. ⁵ _____ Mr Quan next door, and he said that they're going to film some scenes for a new film in our street. It's called *On Our Street*.
B Really? What's it about? Is it a romantic comedy? Or a documentary?
A I think it's a historical drama, set in the 19th century.
B ⁶ _____ I'm really excited. ⁷ _____ Maybe we'll be in the actual film.

V. Complete the dialogue using the notes below.

How many tickets? 2 adults, 2 children
 Adults: £5.50; Children (under 15): £4
 Which film? Skull Island
 Screen: Screen 1
 Which showing? 17.00 or 20.00 → 20.00
 Total price: £ _____

Clerk Hi. Can I help you?
Sue Yes, I'd like ¹ _____ tickets for ² _____, please.
Clerk Which showing: ³ _____ or ⁴ _____?
Sue ⁵ _____.
Clerk Adults or children?
Sue ⁶ _____.
Clerk OK. So, that's ⁷ _____ for the ⁸ _____ showing of ⁹ _____. That'll be £¹⁰ _____.
Sue OK. Here you are. Which screen is it, please?
Clerk ¹¹ _____.
Sue Thanks.

VI. Put the words or phrases in the correct order to make sentences for a dialogue to the box office to book tickets, then use them to complete it.

1. the / thank / for / Apollo Theatre box office / calling / you
2. I / can / tickets / Spider-Man: Far From Home / 3rd November / to see?
3. afraid / showing / I'm / that / sold / out / is
4. please / tickets / I'd / three / £35 / adults / at / like / for
5. would / how / to / you / pay / like?
6. have / I / number / can / card / your / please / ?
7. security code / the / on / three-digit / the / back / what's / ?
8. put / I'll / tickets / your / the / in / today / post

Clerk

You

Clerk Which showing would you like?

You The seven, please.

Clerk

You What about the eight thirty showing?

Clerk Yes, we have tickets for that. Adults or children?

You

Clerk

You By credit card.

Clerk It's OK.

You That's 0021007651112.

Clerk

You It's 689.

Clerk

3F. Writing

• Writing an informal letter to make invitations

I. Reorder the sentences in each paragraph of the body in the friendly letter.

Dear Jack,

Thanks for your letter and sorry I didn't reply sooner.

I _____ a. The film has got only the average scores from the reviewers.

_____ b. The special effects are marvellous, but there are several violent scenes.

_____ c. The story is very exciting because it is a vampire movie.

_____ d. I went to see a great film at the cinema last weekend - *Morbius*, one of the Sony Marvel films.

_____ e. I went with my friend Nam because he loves Marvel films a lot.

II _____ a. The ice cream was really delicious and tasty.

_____ b. After the film, we met some classmates at an ice cream shop.

_____ c. We had an interesting chat about everything.

III _____ a. I think we'll have a coffee before we go to the cinema.

_____ b. Do you fancy going to the cinema next week?

_____ c. The script is written by JK Rowling, and its star is Johnny Depp.

_____ d. I know you love fantasy films, so we'll see *Fantastic Beats: The Crimes of Grindelwald*, a film of Warner Bros.

_____ e. Let me know and I'll book the tickets.

Anyway, I'd better go now. Let me know about my invitation.

Regards,

Phong

II. Write a letter to your friend in which you:

- say what film you watched

- a great cartoon / last Sunday / *The Bad Guys* by DreamWorks
- go with my close friends / all / enjoy cartoons
- *The Bad Guys* / a gang of villains / and / committed / a series of crimes around the city
- caught by the police / climax of the film / try / become good citizens / help the police / arrest other gangs

- combination / a cartoon / action / adventure
- fight / the good / the bad /very exciting / happens / an exotic planet
- come / my house / early next Sunday / go shopping / the coming holiday
- let / know / book / tickets

How are you these days? Sorry I didn't reply your letter sooner.

[illegible]

Mai

I. Complete the text with the words below.

War

The British are not famous for action films, but the Bond films are very successful. The main ¹ _____, James Bond, is an intelligent ² _____. He is reckless, but also ³ _____ - especially with women. Bond first appeared in books by the British ⁴ _____ Ian Fleming. Fleming was originally a ⁵ _____ worked for the British Intelligence ⁶ _____ during the Second World ⁷ _____. He started writing ⁸ _____ in 1953. Six ⁹ _____ have played the ¹⁰ _____ of Bond in films. The most recent is Daniel Craig.

II. Complete the text with the words below.

working characters good good-looking lives
musical playing plays restaurant actor

Johnny Depp is an American ¹ _____. He's 48 and ² _____ in France, the USA and the Bahamas. He's ³ _____ and fashionable. He's also ⁴ _____ and he ⁵ _____ the guitar - he likes ⁶ _____ rock music. He's interested in food and he owns a ⁷ _____ in Paris with some of his acting friends. As an actor, he plays many different ⁸ _____. They're often a little strange but usually ⁹ _____, such as Jack Sparrow in *The Pirates of the Caribbean*. At the moment, he's ¹⁰ _____ on a film called *Dark Shadows*.

III. Choose the correct words.

1. *The Hobbit* is a Hollywood **blockbuster** / **plot** by director Peter Jackson.



2. J.R.R Tolkien wrote the original novel in 1930, but he didn't write the **scene** / **script** for the film.

3. There are a lot of **special effects** / **cast**, and most of them are computer generated.

4. The **crew** / **cast** includes Ian McKellen, who plays Gandalf, Elijah Wood, Martin Freeman, and many other famous actors.

5. The London Philharmonic Orchestra performed the music for the **plot** / **soundtrack**.

6. The **film set** / **crew** for *The Hobbit* was in New Zealand. The director, who was born in Pukerua Bay, chose the location because of its natural beauty.

7. However, some of the **plot** / **scenes** with Gollum were filmed in Pinewood Studios, UK.

IV. Choose the correct adjectives.

1. The film was too **scary** / **gripping** for the children. They hid behind the sofa.

2. The ending was very **predictable** / **moving**. A lot of people were crying as they left the cinema.

3. It was a very **slow** / **moving** film. Not much happened in the first hour.

4. I'm not keen on war films. They're too **slow** / **violent** for me.
 5. I can't stand romantic comedies. They're too **predictable** / **serious**.
 6. The special effects were absolutely **spectacular** / **moving**.
 7. I didn't find the characters or the story interesting. It was a very **gripping** / **dull** film.
 8. It was a really **entertaining** / **serious** film - the audience clapped at the end.
- V. Read the sentences. What types of film are the people talking about? Then match each adjective with a type of film.**

war film science-fiction film romantic tragedy musical
horror film historical drama comedy

boring entertaining funny gripping moving scary violent

1. 'The acting was great and I laughed from beginning to end! '
2. 'I couldn't look when Dracula came into her bedroom.'
3. 'My dad enjoyed it - he's interested in history. I thought it was terrible.'
4. 'I cried at the end when he asked her to marry him.'
5. 'It was about the Gulf War. I didn't enjoy it. There was too much blood.'
6. 'The story was fantastic. I didn't want the film to finish. And the special effects were amazing. The aliens looked real!'
7. 'I enjoyed the film. The costumes were lovely, and the singing and dancing were great too.'

VI. Complete the sentences with the film genres below. There is one that you do not need.

romantic comedies documentary film animated films horror films
musicals historical dramas science-fiction films

1. Pixar Studios make excellent _____ such as *Wall-E*. The drawings are



wonderful.

2. My mum loves _____, like *The Sound of Music*.
3. I always think the costumes in _____ look a bit silly. Did people really use to dress that way?

4. Would you rather watch a(n) _____ about something real, or a fictional story?

5. _____ are usually about aliens and outer space. I'm just not interested in that.

6. I'm not very keen on _____. I get too frightened.

VII. Complete the meaning with the words below.

dull gripping slow spectacular serious moving funny

1. amazing to see _____

2. very exciting _____

3. makes you laugh _____

4. doesn't move quickly _____

5. makes you feel something strongly _____

VIII. Complete the sentences with the correct adjectives.

1. It's a very _____ film. I had bad dreams for months.

2. It's a very _____ film. I laughed a lot.

3. It's a _____ film. There's a lot of blood.

4. It's a very _____ film. Everyone cried.

5. It's a very _____ film. I was on the edge of my seat!

Grammar

IX. Choose the correct answers.

1. I haven't seen **much** / **many** films this year.

2. I hope you like black coffee. There isn't **some** / **any** milk.

3. We have **a little** / **a lot of** students at our school this year.

4. **A few** / **A little** friends are coming round to dinner this evening.

5. I haven't got **much** / **many** time before I catch the train.

6. Do you like **some** / **any** songs on their new album?

7. Jack can speak only **a few** / **a little** words in Vietnamese.

X. Complete the sentences with the correct determiners.

1. How _____ classmates did you invite to your last birthday party?

2. We've only got a _____ DVDs. We usually download films from the Internet.

3. Careful! There are a _____ of pedestrians crossing the road.

4. Are there _____ banks in this street?

5. 'How _____ money have you got?' - 'About 1 million VND.'

6. I need to go shopping. There isn't _____ food in the fridge.

7. There are _____ newspapers on my desk. Take one before you go.

8. We don't know a _____ of people. We've just moved here.

9. There's a _____ traffic in the village in the morning, but not _____

10. Don't drink it all. We haven't got _____ water and everybody's thirsty.

XI. Complete the sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

1. I'm going to tell you a secret. You _____ tell anyone.

2. You _____ drop cans in the street. The police might fine you.

3. Nam _____ work harder. He's going to fail his exams.

4. You _____ smoke in restaurants in Viet Nam. It's against the rules.

5. You _____ start each sentence with a capital letter.

6. Jack _____ be home before 10.30 p.m. on Friday nights.

7. We _____ forget Mai's birthday. It's next Tuesday.

XII. Complete the sentences with *mustn't* or *needn't* and the correct verbs below.

buy go miss go do give shout

1. We _____ shopping this afternoon. The fridge is full.

2. They _____ another lesson. Mr Brown is angry with them.

3. You _____ ! I can hear you.
4. You _____ the homework tonight. The teacher wants it next week.
5. We _____ Nick a big present. Something small will be OK.
6. I _____ to bed too late tonight. I have to get up early tomorrow.
7. You _____ me a lift to school tomorrow. I'm going with Linda.

XIII. Complete the article with the correct form of *must*, *mustn't*, *needn't* or *don't have to*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

The 80/20 Rule

Cindy works in an expensive designer clothes shop in central London, and she ¹ _____ look good every day - it's important for her to make a good impression.

'I ² _____ look badly-dressed,' she says. 'In my shop, the shop assistants ³ _____ wear smart clothes and look clean and tidy, and they ⁴ _____ just stand there and look miserable. After all, people are coming into the shop to buy fashionable new clothes, so they don't want to see someone looking bored, untidy and unfashionable. They ⁵ _____ buy anything, and they won't if they think that the assistant isn't helpful. However, being well-dressed and friendly is only part of the job. In the shop where I work, we also ⁶ _____ think about the 80/20 rule. It's an important rule in shop sales. It says that 20% of the customers that come into your shop regularly make 80% of the purchases. So, when regular customers come in, we ⁷ _____ make them feel welcome by remembering their names and telling them what's new in the shop and what's on sale. Of course, we ⁸ _____ remember the names of customers who don't come in regularly - that's impossible and, anyway, some customers hate it when you start talking to them. They just want to look at clothes by themselves. What's more, we ⁹ _____ say anything that sounds like we're trying to persuade somebody to buy something they don't want. Every customer hates that. But we ¹⁰ _____ offer good advice. It's important that customers think that we know about the clothes we're



selling.'

Word Skills

XIV. Choose the correct words.

1. A **friendly** / An **unfriendly** person makes a lot of friends.
2. A **mature** / An **immature** person behaves like a child.
3. A **tolerant** / An **intolerant** person doesn't listen to other people's opinions.
4. An **honest** / A **dishonest** person always tells the truth.
5. An **ambitious** / **unambitious** person tries very hard to be successful.

6. A **sensitive** / An **insensitive** person doesn't think about other people's feelings.

7. A **rational** / An **irrational** person thinks clearly and carefully.

8. A **loyal** / **disloyal** friend says nasty things about you when you're not there.

9. An **active** / **inactive** person gets a lot of exercise.

10. A **lucky** / An **unlucky** person often gets bad luck.

XV. Complete the sentences. Use the negative form of the words below.

ambitious active grateful sensitive honest patient

1. My friend Sue never thanked me for my help. She's so _____.
2. In the daytime, night animals are _____.
3. Julia is very _____. I don't trust her.
4. I'm very _____. I don't like long meetings or waiting for things.
5. My brother is _____. He sometimes says nasty things and hurts people's feelings.
6. Laura doesn't want to have a good job or makes a lot of money. She's totally _____.

XVI. Complete the adjectives in the sentences with the prefixes below.

dis- im- in- ir- un- un-

1. These jeans are very _____ comfortable. They're too tight.
2. She was wearing a very _____ usual dress. It had spotty sleeves and a long, checked skirt.
3. I didn't believe what the man said. It seemed _____ credible.
4. He said he wasn't going to change his mind. His decision is _____ reversible.
5. We're not staying at that hotel again. We were quite _____ satisfied with our room.
6. This exercise is _____ possible. I can't do it.

Use of English

XVII. Complete the text with the words below.

*action active actress characters does
flying generous plays charity working*

Angelina Jolie is an American ¹ _____. She was born in 1975 and is attractive, kind, and intelligent. She ² _____ many different types of ³ _____, but she is often in ⁴ _____ films, such as *Lara Croft: Tomb Raider*. She also ⁵ _____ voices for animated films, and at the moment she's ⁶ _____ on *Kung Fu Panda 2*. She's very hardworking and ⁷ _____ and she does a lot of voluntary work for ⁸ _____ with the United Nations. She's very ⁹ _____ in her free time too. She likes ¹⁰ _____ and she owns a small plane.

XVIII. Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Television is one of man's most important ¹ _____ of communication. It brings ² _____ and sounds from around the world into millions of homes. A person with a television set can sit in his house and watch the President ³ _____ a speech or visit a foreign country. He can see a war being fought and watch statesmen try to ⁴ _____ peace. ⁵ _____ television, home viewers can see and learn about people, places, and things in faraway lands. TV even takes viewers out of this world. It brings them ⁶ _____ of America's astronauts as the astronauts explore outer space.

⁷ _____ all these things, television brings its viewers a steady stream of programmes that are ⁸ _____ to entertain. In fact, TV provides many more ⁹ _____ programmes than any other kind. The programmes include action- packed dramas, light comedies, sporting ¹⁰ _____, and motion pictures.

1. A. procedure B. means C. manner D. technology
2. A. pictures B. images C. visages D. portraits
3. A. compose B. type C. computerize D. make
4. A. bring about B. make out C. bring round D. move around

5. A. In B. Because of C. At D. Through
 6. A. covering B. views C. coverage D. looks
 7. A. In addition to B. As to C. Beside D. By
 8. A. designed B. patterned C. monitored D. built up
 9. A. excitement B. distraction C. fun D. entertainment
 10. A. happenings B. events C. occurrences D. meetings

Reading

XIX. Read the text, and match paragraphs 1-4 with four of the headings (A-E). There is one extra heading that you do not need.

- A. The man who created James Bond _____
 B. British action films _____
 C. The actors who play Bond _____
 D. The Bond books _____
 E. What's James Bond like? _____

1 The British do not make many action films. They are more famous for historical dramas and, more recently, romantic comedies like *Four Weddings and a Funeral*. However, in 1962 a film called *Dr No* appeared. It was about an intelligence agent called James Bond and was an immediate success. There are now over twenty James Bond films, and they are some of the most successful action films ever made.

2 Ian Fleming, the author of the James Bond books, was born in 1908, and went to Eton, one of the most expensive private schools in Britain. In the 1930s he worked as a journalist and a banker. But he wanted a more exciting life and in the Second World War he got a job in the British Intelligence Service. After the war Fleming returned to journalism, but in 1953 he started writing thrillers, using his wartime experience in the intelligence services. In all, he wrote fourteen Bond books, selling millions of copies around the world. He died in 1964.

3 James Bond works for MI6, the international part of the British Intelligence Service. His other name is 007. In the books and early films, Bond is charming, drinks and smokes a lot, and has many affairs with women. In more recent films, he is more sensitive and less reckless, and the female characters play a bigger role in the stories. Bond is famous for the way he introduces himself, 'The name's Bond. James Bond.'

4 Six actors have played the part of Bond: Sean Connery, George Lazenby, Roger Moore, Timothy Dalton, Pierce Brosnan and Daniel Craig.

XX. Match the topic sentences A-F with the film reviews 1-5. There is one extra sentence you do not need.

- A. *Angel from the inner city* is a film biography of a great jazz singer.
 B. This film has no plot, no characters, just a handsome male lead.
 C. Can a sequel ever be a real success?
 D. This is another stunning documentary from Jane Brathwaite.
 E. Fans of the disaster movie will be not disappointed!
 F. This is a spectacular horror film that will keep you awake all night.

1 _____ They said nothing could be better than the original, but I think they were wrong. The latest film in the Darkness series is just as gripping as the first story. If the epilogue wasn't enough for you and you wanted some, you'll love this next story.

2 _____ If you're already a fan, you'll absolutely like it. If you don't like musicals, you won't choose this film. But you ought to see it anyway, and you might be surprised. A moving story about the challenges of life. Don't miss it.

3 _____ Her projects are famous for their amazing scenery and serious message. This film follows in the path of hurricane Katrina, which brought so much destruction to the coast of Louisiana last year. It will really make you think.

4 _____ The fast-moving new film from director Seth Goldblum is going to be a hit this winter. *White-out* tells the story of a group of skiers who are caught in an avalanche. It's gripping from the first minute, and the scenes on the mountain are really scary. You must see this!

5 _____ If that's enough for you, you'll enjoy this ridiculous romantic comedy. If you're looking for a gripping story, a funny script or you just want some entertainment, you won't find it here. It was so dull, my friend asked for a refund.

XXI. Read the text, and choose the best answers.

Every Picture Tells a Story

The filming and photography in news programmes is very important in bringing the stories to life and making us realise how events affect people. But the traditional techniques of filming are slowly changing and not everyone is happy with this.

Viewers have recently complained that camerawork on news programmes, while very artistic and clever, is more suited to feature films and documentaries. Apparently, many of us are distracted by clever camerawork and our attention is taken away from the real focus, which is the story.

Several techniques have been criticized. One of these is the 'circling camera'. This is when the cameraman goes round the person who is talking so that at one point we see the back of his head. Another technique is when the camera is not held steadily and shakes. It gives the impression of slight panic and is often used in films today.

The BBC insists that camerawork like this is a sign of artistic and technological progress and is interesting and attractive, particularly to a young audience. But how appropriate is it to have a circling camera when reporting on something as ordinary as interest rates by the bank?

1. Pictures are important in the news because _____.
 - A. it's traditional to have them
 - B. they show us important places
 - C. they help us understand the story
2. Some people today complain that _____.
 - A. the filming isn't very good
 - B. the filming is boring
 - C. the filming is distracting
3. One modern filming technique is _____.
 - A. the camera moves in a circle
 - B. when people stand in a circle
 - C. there is a circle of cameras
4. The television company _____.
 - A. thinks it's OK to film this way
 - B. has apologized
 - C. promises to change the way news is filmed
5. What is the writer's attitude?
 - A. He likes artistic camerawork.
 - B. He thinks the filming should suit the subject.
 - C. He thinks there should be more filming with news stories.

UNIT 4: Our planet

4A. Vocabulary

• Weather

I. Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

1. They couldn't get out of the house because there was so much **mist** / **snow** / **frost** in front of the door
2. Let's go out for a walk - it's really warm now and the **storm** / **snow** / **sun** is shining.
3. Oh, no! Look at those **clouds** / **rain** / **storms**! I hope you brought your umbrella with you.
4. In the winter, people love watching **showers** / **snowflakes** / **winds** fall. It's amazing that each one is different.
5. I don't mind wet weather because I like watching **raindrops** / **snowflakes** / **floods** run down the window.
6. I prefer a **shower** / **wind** / **snowflake** to heavy rains because I know it won't last long.
7. I'm scared of **showers** / **rain** / **thunder** because of the loud noise.
8. Be careful going for a walk in the winter or you may slip on **rain** / **mist** / **ice**.

II. Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

1. I love flying my kite when it's **icy** / **misty** / **windy**.
2. Children can play out in **sunny** / **snowy** / **cloudy** weather if they are wearing warm clothes.
3. It was difficult to see in the **misty** / **windy** / **sunny** weather, but then he noticed her walking towards him.
4. This morning everyone felt very cold in the **cloudy** / **frosty** / **sunny** weather.
5. People have to drive very slowly in **icy** / **foggy** / **sunny** weather because they can't see where they're going.
6. When it's **cloudy** / **sunny** / **frosty**, you should carry a raincoat or an umbrella.
7. It was a **cloudy** / **windy** / **stormy** night with rain and very strong winds. I didn't sleep at all.
8. The pavements are very **frosty** / **icy** / **snowy** so be careful not to slip.

• Describing temperature

III. Write the adjective below next to the temperatures.

- | | <i>freezing</i> | <i>cold</i> | <i>mild</i> | <i>below zero</i> |
|---------|-------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------------|
| | <i>sweltering</i> | <i>warm</i> | <i>hot</i> | <i>cool</i> |
| 1. 25°C | _____ | | | |
| 2. 10°C | _____ | | | |
| 3. 45°C | _____ | | | |
| 4. 37°C | _____ | | | |
| 5. 18°C | _____ | | | |
| 6. 0°C | _____ | | | |
| 7. -4°C | _____ | | | |
| 8. 3°C | _____ | | | |

• Natural disasters

IV. Match the natural disasters to their definitions.

- | <i>drought</i> | <i>mudslide</i> | <i>flood</i> | <i>avalanche</i> | <i>epidemic</i> |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>famine</i> | <i>forest fire</i> | <i>earthquake</i> | <i>tornado</i> | <i>tsunami</i> |

1. A dry climate in a wooded area may cause this.	_____
2. It is an extreme violent storm consisting of air that spins very quickly and causes a lot of damage.	_____
3. A large number of cases of a disease that happen at the same time will cause this.	_____
4. It is a very large wave, caused by extreme conditions such as an earthquake which can cause a lot of damage when it reaches land.	_____
5. This happens when a lot of wet earth suddenly falls down the side of a hill or mountain.	_____

6. When a large mass of snow, ice and rocks falls down the side of a mountain, it will cause this.	_____
7. It is a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live.	_____
8. When there is a sudden shaking of the Earth's surface that causes a lot of damage, we'll have this.	_____
9. This happens when a large number of people have little or no food for a long time and many people die.	_____
10. This happens when a large amount of water covers an area that is usually dry.	_____

V. Complete the sentences with the correct words below.

devastation eruption protection prediction destruction

- The _____ of a volcano can cause a tsunami.
- Scientists' _____ is that climate change will get worse in ten years.
- Hurricane Katrina caused _____ in New Orleans in 2005.
- The fire caused the _____ of an old theatre.
- We must give some animals _____ so they can survive.

VI. Complete the text about Cumbre Vieja with the words given for each section.

directions tsunami future tonnes volcano

Cumbre Vieja is an enormous, active ¹ _____ in the Canary Islands. Scientists know that at some time in the ² _____ it will erupt. They are worried that its side will collapse and ³ _____ of rock will fall into the sea. This would cause a huge ⁴ _____ that would travel very fast in all ⁵ _____ away from the Canary Islands.

catastrophe damage energy equipment eruption

The wave would have enough ⁶ _____ to cross the Atlantic and cause terrible ⁷ _____ to the east coast of America. This would be a ⁸ _____. Although the scientists can't predict exactly when the volcano will erupt, they are going to put some ⁹ _____ on Cumbre Vieja which will give them an early warning of a(n) ¹⁰ _____.

VII. Complete the sentences with the below.

*avalanche disease drought earthquake famine
flood hurricane tsunami volcanic eruption*

- A huge cloud of ash from the _____ means planes cannot fly near the island.
- The _____ has brought rain and winds of 180 km/h.
- Over 30 cm of snow has fallen in two days, so the chance of an _____ is very high.
- The _____ is spreading from village to village, and thousands of people are very ill.
- The _____ is worse this year because the rice and vegetable crops have both failed.
- When the house shook, I knew there was a(n) _____.
- Nobody was on the beach when the _____ reached the shore.
- The _____ has killed animals who usually drink from rivers and streams which are now dry.
- Because of the _____, travel is impossible without a boat.

VIII. Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Droughts don't always become ¹ _____ (NATURE) disasters, but when they do, they result in a famine, like the one in Ethiopia between 1983 and 1985. The international charity Oxfam says that famine is a ² _____ (COMBINE) of three ³ _____ (FAIL): not enough food ⁴ _____ (PRODUCE), not enough opportunities for people to get food, and most ⁵ _____ (IMPORTANT), a slow ⁶ _____ (REACT) to the famine from local and international ⁷ _____ (GOVERN). ⁸ _____ (ORGANISE) such as Oxfam ask people around the world for ⁹ _____ (DONATE) to help the victims of famines and

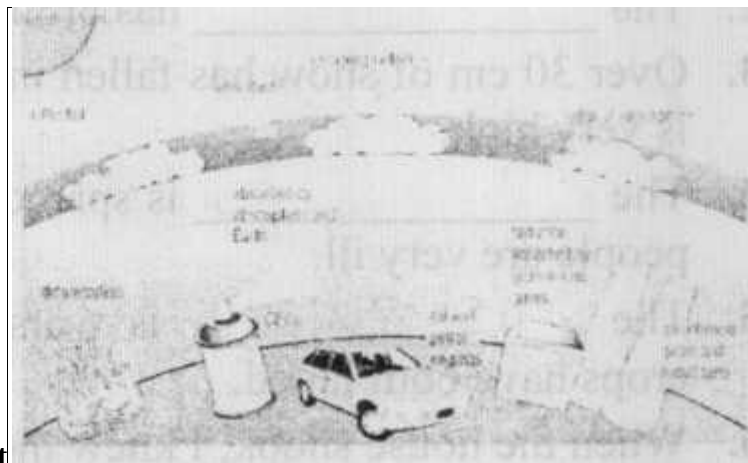
other disasters. Thousands of people in affected countries rely on the ¹⁰ _____ (KIND) of people who give their money to charities like Oxfam.

IX. Match 1-5 with a-e to make sentences.

1. The tsunami reached _____
2. The United Nations is sending food aid to _____
3. A year without rain has caused _____
4. The volcanic eruption has destroyed _____
5. Five skiers were injured in _____
 - a. the forest and all the homes in the area around the mountain.
 - b. the avalanche on Saturday afternoon.
 - c. the victims of the famine.
 - d. the coast and destroyed thousands of homes.
 - e. a serious drought in Western Australia.

X. Complete the text with the words given below.

freeze fuels gases greenhouse heat
trap



The Greenhouse Effect

What is like when you're in a ¹ _____ on a sunny day? It's boiling hot. That's because the sun's rays ² _____ the air there and the glass windows ³ _____ the heat inside. Outside, in the earth's atmosphere, greenhouse ⁴ _____ such as carbon dioxide. Without them, we'd ⁵ _____. However, too much of them and the opposite happens. Burning fossil ⁶ _____ such as oil and coal pollutes the earth's atmosphere and makes the greenhouse effect worse.

• Verbs of movement

VI. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

- head take off reach approach land spin*
1. The pilot managed _____ the aircraft safely.
 2. The climbers _____ the summit of the mountain yesterday.
 3. The wheels were _____ in the mud, but the car wouldn't move.
 4. She and her child boarded a plane that _____ to where her family lived.
 5. When I _____, the deer immediately ran away.
 6. I felt quite excited as the plane _____ from the airport.

• In the street

VII. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases below.

- street market road sign bus stop festival*
shop signs lamp post parade pedestrian crossing
1. The old lady was sitting at a _____, waiting for the bus to the city centre.
 2. Thanks to the light from the _____, we found our keys in the street last night.

3. She made her way across the road at a _____, and stood in front of the City Theatre.
4. Ahead of us was a _____, the word 'STOP' in the centre of a circle - it means we could not drive through.
5. We found the T-shirt at a _____ in the main square.
6. A large _____ marched slowly and solemnly down the streets on the Independence Day.
7. Millions of people from all over the world take part in the famous Munich beer _____ every October.
8. The local stores all had different _____ for the day.

• **Climate change**

VIII. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases below.

deforestation pollution sea level fossil fuels
extinction global warming floods greenhouse gas

1. Burning too many _____ has caused global warming.
2. _____ has created an Arctic shipping route possibility.
3. Carbon dioxide is the main _____.
4. _____ is adding to the problem of global warming.
5. Many of Africa's big animals are being driven to _____ due to illegal hunting.
6. Many people have been forced to leave their homes because of _____.
7. Major steps are being taken to control the _____ of beaches.
8. The town is 500 metres above _____.

XIV. Choose the correct words to make sentences about ideas that would help the environment.

1. Teachers should **ban** / **discuss** environmental issues with their students.
2. If governments don't **achieve** / **prevent** global warming, more natural disasters will occur.
3. Local councils should **promote** / **ban** the recycling of household waste.
4. Developing countries should **avoid** / **promote** the mistakes made by developed countries.
5. Governments should **ban** / **improve** the use of CFC gases.
6. Multinational companies should **improve** / **increase** conditions in their factories in developing countries.
7. Governments should try to **avoid** / **achieve** the targets for carbon emissions that they agree on.
8. Governments should **prevent** / **increase** investments in renewable sources of energy.

XV. Complete the text. Use one word only for each gap.

Many scientists are worried about ¹ _____ warming. The consequence could be serious. If all the ² _____ in the Arctic and Antarctic regions melted, sea ³ _____ would rise and cause terrible ⁴ _____. If this happened, people living in coastal areas would lose their homes. The melting ice would also affect the ⁵ _____ of the sea. If the sea got colder, the northern part of the world would freeze. There would be terrible ⁶ _____ storms and millions of people would die.

XVI. Match i-viii with a-h to make compound nouns used to talk about the environment. Then complete the sentences with these compound nouns.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------|--------------|
| i. solar | _____ | a. species |
| ii. ozone | _____ | b. rain |
| iii. carbon | _____ | c. effect |
| iv. global | _____ | d. layer |
| v. endangered | _____ | e. warming |
| vi. greenhouse | _____ | f. emissions |
| vii. acid | _____ | g. forest |
| viii. rain | _____ | h. power |

1. The _____ is causing the earth's atmosphere to heat up.
2. Many forests have been damaged by _____.
3. _____ will cause the icebergs to melt.
4. Most of the Amazon _____ is in Brazil.
5. The _____ helps to protect the earth from harmful radiation from the sun.
6. Coal-burning power stations are a source of _____.
7. Some _____ can only be seen in zoos.
8. _____ is a renewable source of energy.

4B. Grammar

• Comparison

I. Write true sentences using the comparative form of the adjective in brackets.

1. silver / gold (heavy) → *Gold is heavier than silver.*
2. Norway / Brazil (warm) → _____
3. April / January (short) → _____
4. fruit/ junk food (healthy) → _____
5. Laos / Viet Nam (small) → _____
6. Fiats / Ferraris (expensive) → _____
7. tigers / horses (dangerous) → _____

II. Complete the sentences with the correct form of comparative adjectives.

1. Eating at home is _____ eating in restaurants. (cheap)
2. People in cities work _____ hours _____ in the past. (long)
3. There is more traffic now, so the streets are _____. (noisy)
4. History is much _____ physics. (interesting)
5. Houses are _____ they were ten years ago. (expensive)
6. Ha Noi in summer is even _____ I expected. (hot)

III. Complete the sentences with the words given below.

than intelligent most more
bigger the tallest best

1. Blue whales are longer _____ elephants.
2. Dogs are _____ than cats.
3. Are humans the most _____ animals in the world?
4. Gorillas aren't the _____ aggressive animals.
5. Giraffes are the _____ animals in the world.
6. Dolphins aren't _____ noisiest animals in the sea.
7. Humans are _____ common than tigers.
8. Have chimpanzees got the _____ memory?

• Superlatives, too and enough

IV. Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives and the cues below.

- a. river in Europe d. planet in the solar system
b. airport in the world e. country in the world
c. lake in the world f. disaster film of all times

1. Jupiter is (large) _____.
2. The Volga is (long) _____.
3. *Titanic* is (successful) _____.
4. The Caspian Sea is (big) _____.
5. London Heathrow is (busy) _____.
6. Djibouti in Africa is (hot) _____.

V. Complete the questions with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives. Then answer the questions.

1. What is _____ (big) country in the world? _____
2. Is the Atlantic Ocean _____ (large) or _____ (small) than the Pacific Ocean?

3. Which is _____ (cold) continent in the world? _____
4. Is gold _____ (heavy) than silver? _____
5. What's _____ (high) mountain in the world? _____
6. Which is _____ (near) to the Sun: Mars or the Earth?

VI. Complete the sentences with *enough* or *too* and the words in brackets.

1. This film's _____ (scary) for me. I'm leaving.
2. Have you had _____ (food)? I don't want you to be hungry.
3. It's _____ (hot) in here. Can you turn on the air conditioner?
4. The water isn't _____ (warm) to go swimming. You'll freeze.
5. I'd like a new laptop, but it's _____ (expensive).
6. Did you spend _____ (time) on this homework?

VII. Complete the sentences with *too* and an adjective below.

boring cold expensive scary sweet tired
untidy

1. It's _____ in here to have the window open. Can you close it, please?
2. That DVD is _____. It's £50.
3. I can't drink this tea. It's _____.
4. That film is _____ to watch from beginning to end.
5. I'm not going to stay up and watch the film with you. I'm _____.
6. I can't find anything in my room. It's _____.
7. I'm not going to watch the horror film with you. It's _____.

VIII. Complete the sentences with *enough* and a noun or an adjective below.

exercise funny old people time television

1. I haven't got _____ to finish my homework.
2. I didn't enjoy the comedy. It wasn't _____.
3. He doesn't do _____ to stay healthy.
4. We can't play football. There aren't _____.
5. Go to bed. You've watched _____.
6. I'm not _____ to drive a car.

IX. Complete the sentences with *enough* and the adjectives or nouns in brackets.

1. Susan isn't _____ to reach that cupboard, (tall)
2. Is your English _____ to visit Britain? (good)
3. I never have _____ to watch TV. (time)
4. It isn't _____ to go swimming, (warm)
5. We haven't got _____ to make pancakes, (milk)
6. Ben isn't _____ to speak in front of the class. (confident)

X. Rewrite the sentences with the same meaning using *too* or *enough* and the opposite adjective below.

wet early generous impatient
slow old popular short

1. We're too late to see the start of the film.
2. I'm too young to see that horror film.
3. The film wasn't long enough.
4. She isn't patient enough to wait.
5. He's too unpopular to win the award.
6. These jeans aren't dry enough to wear.
7. His car isn't fast enough.

8. He's too mean to pay for my ticket.

• **Zero conditional**

XL Write zero conditional sentences using the words given.

1. you / turn off / the lights / you / use / less electricity

2. you / freeze / water / it / turn / to ice

3. I / can't sleep / I / drink / too much coffee

4. people / usually smile / at you / you / smile / at them

5. I / eat / a lot of chocolate / I feel ill

6. I / not do / my homework / my teacher / get / annoyed

7. plants / die / they / not get / enough water

8. you / download / songs / you / can / listen to / them on your MP3 player

XII. Complete the sentences with information that is true of you. Use the zero conditional.

1. If I don't have breakfast,

2. If I forget to do my homework,

3. If I eat too much,

4. I get annoyed if

5. I feel sad if

6. If I go to bed late,

XIII. Complete the sentences, using the zero conditional.

1. If you heat water to 100° Celsius, _____.

2. If you dial 113, _____.

3. If you mix blue paint and yellow paint, _____.

4. If you mix green light and red light, _____.

5. If you leave a fish out of water, _____.

6. If you multiply 1,111,111 by 1,111,111, _____.

4C. Word Skills

• **Phrasal verbs**

I. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

look after heat up cut down run out

die out close down use up give up

1. If the world's tropical forests continue to disappear at their present rate, many animal species will _____.

2. The more forests we _____, the hotter the Earth becomes.

3. Kate often asks her cousin to _____ the cat when she is away.
4. You should _____ smoking before it is too late.
5. If the factory _____, 800 people will lose their jobs.
6. The Earth's natural resources are being _____ at an alarming rate.
7. I've got some money you can borrow if you _____.
8. 'Could you _____ some soup for lunch now?'

II. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

wake up stand up stay in go out
get up come back carry on break down

1. It was raining, so we _____ and played computer games.
2. My dad's car _____ on the way to work, so he was very late yesterday.
3. Shall I stop, or do you want me to _____?
4. 'What are you doing tonight?' - 'I _____.'
5. Jack usually _____ before his alarm clock rings.
6. We had to _____ in the meeting because there weren't enough chairs.
7. What time did you _____ from the party last night?
8. She _____ early to study for the exam.

III. Complete the phrasal verbs in the sentences.

1. It's better to _____ on clothes before you buy them.
2. You can _____ up your jacket in the wardrobe.
3. They _____ off their shoes before they went in.
4. We had some free time, so we _____ around the shops.
5. _____ on a jumper if you're cold.
6. I couldn't _____ up my shopping bags because they were too heavy.

• Phrasal verbs and register

IV. Match phrasal verbs 1-8 with the definitions A-H.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------|--------------------|
| 1. fall through | _____ | A. stop sleeping |
| 2. go out | _____ | B. stop working |
| 3. break down | _____ | C. wait |
| 4. hold on | _____ | D. return |
| 5. set off | _____ | E. leave the house |
| 6. wake up | _____ | F. remain at home |
| 7. come back | _____ | G. not happen |
| 8. stay in | _____ | H. start a journey |

V. Complete the sentences with a suitable form of the phrasal verbs from Exercise IV.

1. Last night I _____ with my friends to see a film at the cinema.
2. Our bus _____ on the way to school yesterday.
3. I _____ tonight to do my homework.
4. She _____ late because she didn't set her alarm.
5. His plans to go to university _____ because he didn't pass his exams.
6. My sister told me to _____ while she fetched her jacket.
7. They _____ at dawn to avoid the traffic.
8. We _____ home from the match exhausted.

VI. Rewrite the sentences using the phrasal verbs below. Use the correct tense and form.

get away find out carry on come back come up with
ask for put up with make up talk about look up to

1. Ann produced the solution to the problem immediately.

-
2. My mother used to invent bedtime stories for us.

3. He escaped with minor injuries.

4. I don't see how you can tolerate the constant noise.

5. She respected him for his honesty.

6. He picked up his book and continued reading.

7. My uncle has just returned from five months in Japan.

8. Pupils should be given time to discuss the book with their classmates.

9. You have to request permission if you want to take any photographs here.

10. The exercises let students discover math concepts on their own.

4D. Reading

I. Read the text, and complete the sentences with the correct programme title.

Extinction

This programme looks at several animals close to extinction and questions why they are now in danger. We are taken to the habitats of these different animals and shown why their survival is threatened.

Changing skies

In this excellent series we look at how the changing weather patterns in different continents is affecting the way people live and how they have to adapt.

Natural power

This is an award-winning documentary that traces man's efforts over the centuries to use natural energy resources such as wind and wave power. We look at the first windmills and watermills in several regions.

A day in the life

This unusual programme compares the lives of villagers in a third world country with villagers in the UK and studies how they both deal with environmental issues.

Drive me

A special programme which reveals the range of options available to people who wish to purchase cars that are kinder to the environment.

1. In _____ we can learn historical facts.
2. In _____ we can find out about how to buy something in an environmental-friendly way.
3. In _____ we can see different attitudes to the environment.
4. In _____ we can see how nature is affecting our lifestyle.

5. In _____ we can learn about the reasons for certain natural problems.

II. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

A Load of Rubbish

In the UK, people are finally starting to listen to the message about recycling. British families now recycle about 22% of their waste. Only five years ago, the figure was about 10%. That's good news for the environment - but there's a lot more to do. Some other European countries, like Germany and the Netherlands, already recycle about 60% of their waste and that's the goal for the UK too.

Households in England produce 25 million tonnes of waste a year. More than half of this is garden waste, paper, cardboard and kitchen waste - which people could recycle. They could also recycle plastic, wood, glass and aluminum cans. In fact, if everybody in the UK recycled all of their drinks cans, there would be 14 million fewer rubbish bins of waste each year.

Recycling isn't the only way to reduce the amount of rubbish we throw away. More than 40% of the waste in our bins is packaging from shopping. If we changed the way we shop, we could easily reduce the amount of waste. For example, street markets and small shops often use less packaging than supermarkets. And of course, if we grew our own fruit and vegetables, there wouldn't be any packaging at all.

Task 1. Read the text, and mark the sentences T (true), or F (false).

1. The UK recycles more than Germany and the Netherlands. _____
2. The UK recycles more now than five years ago. _____
3. We throw away a lot of packaging from food. _____

Task 2. Answer the questions.

1. How much of their waste do British families recycle now?

2. How much do they recycle in Germany and the Netherlands?

3. How much waste do households in England produce?

4. What eight different things could people recycle?

5. How could we reduce the amount of packaging that we throw away?

III. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

A Big Hit?

Every year, thousands of rock from space ¹ _____ to the Earth. These are called meteorites. Most of these are very small - less than a metre across. They start to burn when they ² _____ the Earth's atmosphere and usually disappear before they ³ _____ the ground. A few meteorites are too large to disappear when they bum. They ⁴ _____ at very high speed - about 60,000 km/h when they touch the ground - and can cause enormous damage. This happened in Arizona about 50,000 years ago and you can still see the crater today. It's called 'Meteor Crater'. If another large meteorite hit the Earth today, what would ⁵ _____ ? The explosion would be huge. The meteorite would ⁶ _____

everything around it. If it fell into the sea, it would ⁷ _____ an enormous tsunami. It



would be a catastrophe.

But the good news is that large meteorites don't hit the Earth very often. Also, scientists know about the danger, and can ⁸ _____ which meteorites might hit the Earth. It might also be possible to ⁹ _____ the Earth by firing a rocket at a meteorite as it came near to the Earth. This would change its direction and save the world.

Task 1. Complete the text with the words below.

cause devastate fall happen hit
predict protect reach travel

Task 2. Choose the correct answers.

1. Most meteorites don't hit the Earth because _____.
A. they bum in the Earth's atmosphere B. they're too large
2. 'Meteor Crater' appeared when _____.
A. a very large meteorite disappeared B. a very large meteorite hit the Earth
3. If a large meteorite hit the Earth today, _____.
A. it would fall into the sea B. it would be a catastrophe
4. The good news is that _____.
A. scientists can't predict when the next meteorite will come
B. large meteorites don't come very often
5. We could change the direction of a meteorite _____.
A. if we knew that it was coming nearer
B. if we fired a rocket at it

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Too Hot to Handle

1 Imagine the world about two hundred years in the future. The cities of Shanghai, Tel Aviv and Houston are still there, but they are empty. Nobody lives there. What has happened? Disease? A nuclear war? No, the answer is simpler than that; it is too hot. In fact, it is hot enough to kill anyone who stays outside during the day.

2 Heatwaves - periods when the weather is very hot for days or weeks - are already dangerous. In France, over 14,000 died from the heat in the summer of 2003. And in the USA, hurricanes, tornadoes and floods get all the headlines in the news, but in fact, heatwaves kill more people than all those other natural disasters put together.

3 When it's very hot, our bodies keep cool by sweating. This works best when the air is dry. Fortunately, the hottest places on the Earth are also the driest - deserts, for example. But this may change with global warming. Two hundred years from now, many parts of the world may have very high temperatures and also a lot of water in the atmosphere. This will be very dangerous.

4 According to scientists, the only solution is to stop global warming. We can do this by reducing the amount of carbon dioxide we put into the atmosphere. But if we don't reduce carbon emissions, many cities in the future will be too hot for humans.

Task 1. Match headings A-E with paragraphs 1-4. There is one heading that you do not need.

- A. A dangerous combination _____
- B. The dangers of hurricanes and tornadoes _____
- C. Future nightmare: the world in 2200 _____
- D. Our final chance _____
- E. Heat: a common natural disaster _____

Task 2. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. About 200 years from now, some major cities might not have any inhabitants. _____
2. In France, 2003 was a very hot summer. _____
3. In the USA, heatwaves kill a lot of people, but other natural disasters kill more. _____
4. Heatwaves are most dangerous for humans when the air is dry. _____
5. Global warming will make the atmosphere hotter and drier. _____
6. The best way to deal with the danger is to reduce carbon emissions. _____

V. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Cumbre Vieja is a huge, active volcano on La Palma in the Canary Islands. Every few decades it erupts and scientists are worried because the walls of the volcano are getting weaker. Scientists feel that when it erupts, one side of the volcano could collapse and fall into the sea. If this happened, it would be a catastrophe. Why? Because it would cause a tsunami - an enormous wave - the biggest ever recorded in history.

How would it happen?

The volcano is by the sea, and the water next to the volcano is about six kilometres deep. If the volcano collapsed, 500 billion tonnes of rock would fall in the sea. This could create a huge tsunami about 100 metres high.

What would happen next?

The wave would travel away from the Canary Islands in all directions at about 800 km/h. The other Canary Islands would immediately be covered by water. In less than an hour a 90-metre wave would hit north-west Africa. The side of the volcano faces west, across the Atlantic Ocean, which would protect Europe a little. However, a 12-metre tsunami would still reach Lisbon within three hours. After five hours it would reach Britain. The wave could travel a kilometre inland, and devastate towns and villages. London would be flooded. **How far would it travel?**

The wave would have enough energy to travel right across the Atlantic Ocean. Eight hours after the eruption it would hit the east coast of America. It would still be about 30 metres high. Boston would be hit first, followed by New York, the coast down to Miami. The wave would cause a lot of damage in the Caribbean and Brazil too. It would travel for several kilometres inland because the coast is very flat. It would destroy everything and kill thousands of people.

What can we do about it?

Nothing much, it seems. The scientists believe that it is not a question of if, but when. The volcano will collapse at some time in the future, but it could be hundreds or thousands of years from now.

Furthermore, if only part of the volcano collapsed into the sea, the tsunami would be much smaller. Scientists want to put better equipment on Cumbre Vieja so that they can predict the volcano's eruptions in the future and give us an early warning of possible problems.

Task 1. Answer the questions.

1. Why are scientists worried about Cumbre Vieja?

2. How long would it take the wave to reach the African coast?

3. Why would Europe be in less danger than America?

4. How big would the wave be when it reached Portugal?

5. Why would it travel a long way inland in the Caribbean and South America?

6. What can scientists do to predict the eruptions?

Task 2. Find these underlined words in the text.

1. two adjectives that mean 'very big': _____
2. two verbs that mean 'damage very badly': _____

Task 3. Find the underlined verbs in the text that belong to the same word family as the nouns below.

1. destruction _____
2. devastation _____
3. eruption _____
4. prediction _____
5. protection _____

VI. Read the text about tornadoes. Complete the gaps in the text with the sentences below. There is one sentence that you do not need.

- A. The tornado was gone 15 or 20 seconds later.
- B. But in reality, tornadoes aren't quite so kind.
- C. But some can have wind speeds of 480 km/h.
- D. It is this mixture of warm, wet air and cold, dry air that causes tornadoes.
- E. It is called 'Tornado Alley' and it covers most of Texas, Kansas and Nebraska.
- F. It was the biggest and most dangerous tornado outbreak ever.
- G. They can pick up houses, cars, animals and people, and drop them far away.
- H. This is an average of 110 tornadoes every year.

The USA - Tornado Country

Do you know the American story and film *The Wizard of Oz*? It is about a girl from Kansas, called Dorothy, who is caught by a tornado and is taken to a magical world.¹ _____

A tornado, or 'twister', is a strong, dangerous column of air that is in contact with the ground and a cloud at the same time. Most tornadoes have wind speeds below 177 km/h. They travel for a few kilometres and then disappear.² _____ They can be 3 km wide and they can stay on the ground for than 100 km. These twisters are the most dangerous.³ _____

Tornadoes can happen anywhere in the world, but they are very frequent in the United States. There is tornado weather in all of the American states, but there is one area that has more tornadoes than any other.⁴ _____ The area is flat and lies between two mountain ranges. Warm air from Mexico can therefore travel north and meet cold air coming south from Canada.⁵ _____

Texas has the most tornadoes. Between 1950 and 2000, 5,500 tornadoes hit this US state.⁶ _____ However, the worst period of tornado weather of all didn't just affect Texas. The 3 and 4 April 1974 will always be remembered in American history, because in just 16 hours there were 148 tornadoes in 13 states. Some of them were huge and travelled for 60 km. 330 people were killed and 5,500 were injured across America.⁷ _____ So many tornadoes in such a short time is a very rare occurrence, but scientists say that it will

definitely happen again. Next time, though, they promise that the USA will be better prepared.

VII. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Collision Course

1 _____

It is 2036. An enormous asteroid is going to collide with the Earth. If it isn't stopped, it will crash into the Pacific Ocean, creating a devastating tsunami. What happens next?

And no, that isn't a question about the plot of a science fiction film. It's a question about a real danger. There are millions of asteroids in our solar system, and if a large one collided with the Earth, it would be a disaster.

2 _____

If a large asteroid crashed into the Earth tomorrow, what would happen? If it landed in a large city, millions of people would die instantly. The impact would cause massive destruction - imagine colliding with a rock as big as a mountain that is travelling at 20 km/s. If the asteroid landed in the ocean, there would be a giant tsunami. Thousands of cities around the world would be flooded. If the asteroid landed in a very remote area of land, there would be fewer deaths at first. However, the explosion would send a huge cloud of dust into the Earth's atmosphere. This dark cloud would block the light and heat from the sun. Crops wouldn't grow and it would be impossible to feed people.

3 _____

The short answer is: it has happened already. About 65 million years ago, most life on the Earth disappeared - including all of the dinosaurs. We now believe that this was because of a huge asteroid which changed the Earth's weather. The asteroid was at least 10 km in diameter and landed in Mexico, leaving a hole more than 180 km cross.

On the morning of 30 June, 1908, a much smaller asteroid (about 90 metres across) exploded in the sky above central Siberia. Nobody lived nearby, so there were no deaths - although the explosion was so powerful that it destroyed an enormous area of forest.

4 _____

Scientists believe that there are two main options: we could blow up the asteroid with nuclear weapons or we could make it change direction. Both options have their disadvantages. If we blew up the asteroid, it could break into smaller pieces. Each piece could then be a danger. There are several ideas about how to make an asteroid change direction, but nobody knows which would work best - and it's impossible to test the technology. And if we failed, we probably wouldn't get another chance.

Task 1. Match headings A-E with sections 1-4 of the text. There is one heading that you do not need.

- A. What would happen?
- B. Where do the asteroids come from?
- C. What can we do about it?
- D. Science fiction or science fact?
- E. Why hasn't it happened already?

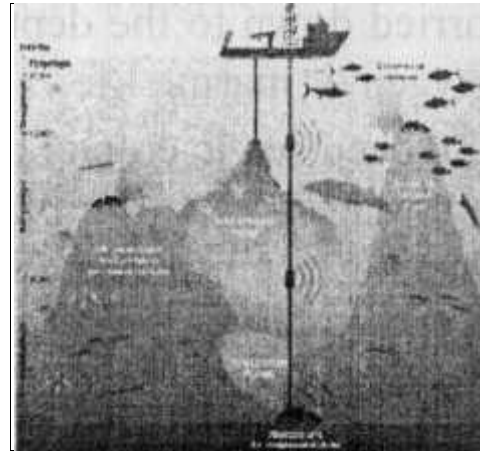
Task 2. Read the text again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. Most asteroids come from outside the solar system. _____
2. Asteroids can be as big as mountains. _____
3. A large asteroid wouldn't cause much damage if it landed in the ocean. _____
4. If an asteroid landed in a very remote area, it could still be a disaster. _____
5. All of the dinosaurs disappeared because a huge asteroid landed in Siberia. _____
6. It is possible for an asteroid to change the weather. _____
7. Scientists don't know exactly how to make an asteroid change direction. _____

III. Read the text, and choose the correct answers.

The Secrets of the Deep

Ivan Popov is a deep-sea biologist. We asked him about the fear of and fascination with one of the most important frontiers of our planet.



Why are we so fascinated by our seas and oceans?

In the past, we didn't know much about our seas and oceans. They represented a frontier to explore, much like outer space today. Popular tales about sea monsters and shipwrecks taught us to have respect for these great expanses of water, and tales often reflected the concerns of the time. For example, in the 1950s, the films about the sea monster Godzilla became very popular. Godzilla was a product of radiation from nuclear testing in the Pacific Ocean. Hardly any of the deep sea had been explored then, and people were afraid of what the radiation might have caused.

How much do we know about the deep sea?

We have very little knowledge of the deep sea. Despite centuries of exploration, we've only mapped 5% of the ocean. It's extraordinary when you consider that oceans cover 71% of our planet's surface and have an average depth of 4 km. And yet we have better maps of the surface of Mars and the dark side of the moon. Think of it this way: we've sent more people to the moon than we have to the deepest part of the ocean.

What kind of creatures have we found in the deep sea?

Every time someone explores the deep, they find incredibly weird new species, such as goblin sharks or vampire squids. Strangely enough, until the late 19th century, no one believed that there was any life in the deep sea. People thought that nothing could survive such a hostile environment: it was incredible cold, with no light, and an enormous amount of pressure. However, not only is there life in the deep sea, but the deepest parts of the ocean floor have thriving ecosystems with giant tube worms, clams, and many other species.



Let's talk a bit more about deep-sea geography. What are its main characteristics?

The deep sea has some of the most amazing geography on the planet. The deepest part of the ocean is almost 11,000 m deep. It's called Challenger Deep and is in the Mariana Trench in the Pacific. If Mount Everest were submerged there, its peak would be more than 2,000 m beneath the surface.

We also have the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. This is part of an underwater mountain range which stretches 70,000 km around our planet. It contains thousands of peaks, many taller than mountains in the Alps.

Why should we care about the deep seas?

The deep sea plays a key role in supporting life on the Earth. It produces 70% of the world's oxygen, it's an important part of the food chain, and it lowers the temperature of our planet. Unfortunately, global warming, ocean acidification, and plastic waste are all threats to this ecosystem. Less and less food is being carried down to the depths of the sea, so more dead zones are appearing, with no oxygen or marine life.

The deep sea is crucial to the survival of all of life on the Earth, and yet this most important part of our planet is the least known. That is a concern, but it's also an amazing opportunity to learn more.

1. People went to see the film Godzilla because they _____.
 A. were fascinated by the deep sea
 B. believed tales about sea monsters
 C. were anxious about radiation from nuclear bombs
2. According to the interview, we know the least about _____.
 A. the dark side of the moon
 B. the bottom of the deep seas
 C. the surface of the planet Mars
3. People thought there wasn't any life in the deep sea because _____.
 A. the conditions were extremely harsh
 B. there weren't any ecosystems there
 C. no one had explored the ocean floor
4. The text states that the Mid-Atlantic Ridge _____.
 A. is 11,000 m high
 B. continues for 70,000 km
 C. isn't as high as Everest
5. The deep sea is important because _____.
 A. there are many undiscovered species
 B. it keeps our planet healthy
 C. it doesn't need a lot of oxygen

4E. Speaking

• Everyday English

I. Choose the correct response.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A: Do you think we do enough to keep our planet healthy? | B: a/ I think we should do more.
b/ I think you shouldn't ask. |
| 2. A: Climate change is destroying our planet. | B: a/ I think we can't stop it.
b/ I think so. It's very serious. |
| 3. A: Global warming will still be a problem for the future. | B: a/ It's for the future generation.
b/ We should do something now. |
| 4. A: Our home wastes a lot of energy. | B: a/ We should use green technology.
b/ We should install more devices. |
| 5. A: The ice caps at the Poles are melting. | B: a/ Right. It's because of floods.
b/ Right, and the sea level is rising. |
| 6. A: The flood tide will get its utmost this evening. | B: a/ Oh, we have to move furniture.
b/ Yeah, we'll have heavy rains. |
| 7. A: The forest fire burst there yesterday. | B: a/ Did local people feel shocking?
b/ Was anyone injured? |
| 8. A: We must close down all the coal and gas power stations. | B: a/ Everyone will be happy with it. |
| 9. A: Are there any alternatives in Viet Nam? | |
| 10. A: How to stay safe in our house when | |

lightning strikes outside?

b/ But we need more electricity.

B: a/ There is wind, solar energy.

b/ There are fossil fuels like coal.

B: a/ We should go out and stay under a big tree.

b/ We should stay away from doors and windows.

• **Photo comparison**

II. Look at the pairs of photos, and the prompts given. Then practise comparing each



pair of photos with your partner.

A

Similarities

- effects of global warming
- polluted environment
- humans do harm to our common home - the Earth

Differences

- 1st photo: smoke from the industrial chimneys pollutes the air; industries may provide jobs to workers
- 2nd photo: local people suffer from forest fires; people lose their houses, all properties, and even their lives in forest fires

B



Similarities

- effect of cutting down trees in large quantities: deforestation
- deforestation causes soil erosion

2. however / some people / not consider / serious enough / because / plastic / cheap / convenient / easy / use and dispose

3. about 8 million tonnes / plastic / enter / world's oceans / every year

4. it / estimated / there / one tonne of plastic / ocean / every five tonnes of fish / and / if no action / taken / plastic / oceans / overweigh fish / by 2050

5. Viet Nam / among the five countries / contribute / a great deal / plastic waste

6. in those countries / there / illegal dumping / plastic waste / oceans / and / collection systems / insufficient

7. we / remember / we / use / plastic bag / just five minutes / but / that plastic bag / take / 500 years / decompose

8. we / follow / green lifestyle 3R (Reduce, Reuse and Recycle)

III. Consider the issue of carbon footprint. Use the prompts below to write a short essay about that global issue.

1. carbon footprint: the amount of carbon dioxide produced as a result of our daily living
2. the issues of reducing carbon footprint is the responsibility of the government or community not individuals - it's absolutely wrong

[illegible]

1. People mustn't bum _____ because it's bad for the environment.
2. The weather is hotter these days, and that is because of _____.
3. Some people are not interested in looking after the _____.
4. People use too much energy today. Moreover, we should cut down on _____ because they can lead to global warming.
5. I don't want to live in a big city because there's too much _____.

6. Some people are very careless to leave some matches or campfires, and that can cause _____.

7. People mustn't cut down so many trees because there'll be _____ after heavy rain.

8. Over 500 people died during last year's COVID-19 _____ in our town.

III. Complete the sentences with the compound nouns below.

acid rain greenhouse effect solar power
ozone layer endangered species rainforest

1. _____, like the orangutan, may not exist by the end of the century.

2. _____ works best in areas where there is a lot of sun.

3. _____ has destroyed many forests in central Europe.

4. The Amazon _____ contains over 30% of the animal and plant species on Earth.

5. The _____ has been linked to global warming, which could cause the ice-caps to melt and sea levels to rise.

6. The _____ absorbs over 90% of the ultraviolet light we receive from the sun.

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

reduce achieve avoid do
make prevent treat provide

1. Future leaders need to _____ the mistakes made in previous policies.

2. Scientists have spent several years _____ research into the effect of global warming.

3. The management refuses to _____ any information about the salaries of company directors.

4. Airlines are looking for an alternative fuel which will _____ their carbon emissions.

5. Doctors are using revolutionary new medicines to _____ the illness.

6. Most governments are trying to _____ climate change by passing a number of measures.

7. Countries which do not _____ the targets established by the agreement should be fined.

8. Experts _____ an important discovery about wind energy recently.

V. Match 1-5 with a-e to make sentences.

1. The landslide

2. Doctors in the area

3. The terrible heat of

4. The flood waters reached

5. The TV report showed the route of

a. say that thousands of people are now ill with the disease.

b. villages along the river and damaged many buildings.

c. the tornado: it struck the city and then moved east.

d. the forest fire has stopped any rescue attempts for now.

e. struck the village and destroyed all the homes in its path.

VI. Complete the news report with the words below.

sent damaged destroyed injured lasted
left lost reached rescued struck

Tipton Bay Hurricane

The hurricane ¹ _____ the town of Tipton Bay on the south coast at 4 p.m. on Saturday afternoon and ² _____ for twelve hours. Winds ³ _____ speeds of 200 km/h. Luckily, people ⁴ _____ their homes before the hurricane arrived, and nobody ⁵ _____ their life. However, flying metal and glass ⁶ _____ about twenty people. Emergency services ⁷ _____ over 50 people from boats near the coast, and charities quickly ⁸ _____ food and tents to help people without homes. The hurricane

seriously ⁹ _____ hundreds of buildings and ¹⁰ _____ crops in the fields around the town.

VII. Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

The Asian Tsunami of December 26th 2004 was one of the most ¹ _____ (devastate) natural disasters in recorded history. More than 225,000 people were killed in eleven countries, and the ² _____ (destruct) reach as far as the east coast of Africa.

The tsunami itself was caused by an earthquake whose epicentre was just off the west coast of Sumatra, Indonesia. That ³ _____ (create) a huge tidal wave 24 metres high, which hit the region of Aceh and ⁴ _____ (flatten) everything in its path. ⁵ _____ (inform) about the tsunami was not exchanged between countries because of the lack of a ⁶ _____ (warn) system in the area. Since the incident, the United Nations has been working on the ⁷ _____ (create) of a system to avoid a similar disaster in the future.

The ⁸ _____ (predict) of tsunamis is only possible if the preceding earthquake is detected. They generally catch their victims completely by surprise. The only ⁹ _____ (act) inhabitants of coastal areas can take is to run to the hills inland and shelter there until the water retreats. However, the effect of a tsunami on the land is usually catastrophic, causing ¹⁰ _____ (homeless) and the loss of livelihood among the people.

Grammar

VIII. Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. The _____ (beautiful) capital city I've visited is Paris.
2. Paul is the _____ (clever) boy I've ever met.
3. What's the _____ (expensive) thing you've ever bought?
4. Her _____ (recent) film is very moving.
5. My new TV has a _____ (good) picture than my old one.
6. Today's horror films are _____ (scary) than they were in the past.
7. Travelling by coach is _____ (cheap) than the train.
8. My cousin Phong is _____ (good-looking) now than when he was younger.
9. Who do you think is the _____ (good) student in our class?
10. It's the _____ (exciting) football match I've ever watched.

IX. Rewrite the words in bold without changing the meaning. Use the correct form of the word in brackets and any other appropriate words.

1. The journey is **less fast** by train than by car. (slow)
2. You should drive **more carefully**, (dangerous)
3. It was the **easiest** difficult exam I've ever done. (difficult)
4. We stayed in the **least clean** hotel in the world. (dirty)
5. She wants to have a **more relaxed** life. (stressful)
6. Tony has a **less loud** voice than Toby. (quiet)
7. He's a lot **more confident** than he used to be. (shy)
8. Mai **doesn't paint badly**. (good)
9. Her house **isn't as near** to the park as ours. (far)
10. People often walk **less slowly** in a city than in the countryside. (fast)

X. Complete the text with comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

I've just been visiting a friend in the countryside. Everything is so different there. It's a lot ¹ _____ (green) than my town, of course. People say that life is ² _____ (quiet) in the countryside, but I don't agree. The birds were so loud that they woke me up. It's certainly ³ _____ (crowded) in a big town than a village, and yes - towns are ⁴ _____ (polluted) because of all the cars. But I find the people in my town ⁵ _____ (friendly), probably because I know so many of them. Actually, the people in my region are considered to be the ⁶ _____ (friendly) people in the whole country. My

friend's next door neighbour was ⁷ _____ (rude) man I've ever met in my life. And another thing: is the countryside really ⁸ _____ (safe) than a town? I don't think so. You have to be a much ⁹ _____ (careful) driver to drive down those country roads because there might be a big tractor coming at you round the corner.

I love spending holidays in the country, but I think I'll be living in my town for a bit ¹⁰ _____ (long).

XI. Complete the sentences with *too* or *enough*.

1. The new student is clever _____ to pass the exam with honour.
2. I don't want to see the film. It's _____ violent.
3. We haven't got _____ money to buy three tickets.
4. I don't think I'll go for a walk today. It's _____ wet.
5. Is that exercise _____ difficult for us to do?
6. Why didn't Ken get the scholarship? I think he hasn't got _____ luck.
7. Don't drink that now. It's _____ hot.

Word Skills

XII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below based on the meaning in brackets.

put on put off keep on turn out take off
get over put up with give up give back cut down

1. Tom is often rude to his sister. I don't know how she _____ him. (tolerate)
2. These changes will _____ the amount of traffic in the town centre. (reduce)
3. How long did it take you to _____ the flu? (recover from)
4. I'm going to _____ fizzy drinks because they're not good for health. (stop)
5. My brother _____ weight really easily. (become heavier)
6. She often _____ writing her essay until the last minute. (delay)
7. Can you _____ the book that you borrowed me last week? (return)
8. What time does your flight _____ ? (leave the ground)
9. The pollution in the river _____ to be from a local factory. (happen)
10. He told them to be quiet, but Simon _____ talking. (continue)

XIII. Complete the sentences with the phrasal verbs with *up* below.

get up give up go up grow up
speak up stand up clean up turn up

1. My mother is always asking me to _____ the kitchen.
2. When my brothers _____, they want to be engineers.
3. We have to _____ every time a teacher enters the classroom.
4. They lost because their best player didn't _____ for the game.
5. My brother has failed his driving test again, but he isn't going to _____.
6. I _____ at 6 o'clock in the morning every day.
7. They say that food prices are going to _____ again this month.
8. _____ ! I can't hear you.

Use of English

XIV. Complete the information about the environment with the words below.

organic improve oil decompose ozone
pesticides recycles renewable ultra-violet warming

Plastic bags can take up to 1,000 years to ¹ _____. When we go shopping, we should take a bag with us.

The ² _____ layer stops ³ _____ light from the sun. It's between 15 and 17 kilometres above the surface of the Earth. About 90% of the world's energy comes from ⁴ _____, coal and gas. One problem is that they are not ⁵ _____ - they will eventually run out. Another problem is that when we burn them they cause

global⁶ _____. At the moment, the EU only ⁷ _____ about 45% of its waste. It wants that figure to be between 50 to 80 per cent.

On non-organic farms, farmers use more than 400 different _____. These can kill wild animals and birds, and also cause water pollution. If more people bought ⁹ _____ food, this would help to ¹⁰ _____ the environment.

XV. Complete the text with the correct word: A, B, C, or D.

In the UK ¹ _____, people throw away about 1,500 kg of food packaging ² _____ second. It makes up about 25% of household waste. This is a ³ _____ problem for the environment, and it is also expensive. The amount of rubbish that ordinary families produce is increasing by 3% every year. The ⁴ _____ of collecting this rubbish is about £2.5 billion, and rising.

Where does all this packaging go? A lot of it ends up ⁵ _____ China. Each year, the UK ⁶ _____ China to receive about two billion tonnes of its waste. Most of the plastic waste goes to Lianjiao, a small village in the south of the country. As a result, the river there has become dirty and the air is ⁷ _____. There is also a growing problem with ⁸ _____, as some of the workers at the recycling centres are as young as four.

Most people agree that the companies who make sandwiches, pizzas, and other products should take action. If they used less packaging, it ⁹ _____ reduce the amount of waste. So some newspapers and politicians in the UK are telling people that they ¹⁰ _____ to take unnecessary plastic packaging back to the supermarket and leave it there.

1. A. one B. lonely C. alone D. single
2. A. all B. any C. ever D. every
3. A. big B. strong C. heavy D. bad
4. A. money B. cost C. price D. refund
5. A. at B. upon C. on D. in
6. A. affords B. costs C. earns D. pays
7. A. polluted B. stressful C. busy D. noisy
8. A. homelessness B. famine C. child labour D. racism
9. A. can B. must C. will D. would
10. A. should B. ought C. must D. mustn't

Reading

XVI. Read the text, and mark the sentences T (true), or F (false).

Every year there are over 150,000 earthquakes around the world. Many are very small and people don't notice them. Others, like the ones in Haiti in 2010, or Japan in 2011, caused terrible damage and can destroy whole towns and cities.

Scientists study the Earth and know where earthquakes are likely to happen. Some countries have a much higher risk than others. Japan has, on average, 1,500 earthquakes every year. In Britain there are 140. The earthquakes in Britain are usually very small and don't cause damage to people's houses. In Japan there are much bigger earthquakes, and many modern buildings are specially built so that they don't get damaged by the movement of the Earth.

One of the big problems with earthquakes is that we don't know when they are going to happen. Scientists can tell us where a big earthquake will probably happen, but they can't tell us the date or the time. If we could predict earthquakes, we could prepare for them. If we were prepared, we could save lives by moving people away from the earthquake area.

In the future things may be different, however. In the 1970s, Chinese scientists noticed something interesting about the behaviour of animals. In the winter of 1974 lots of snakes woke up from their winter sleep and came out into the cold. That winter there were several earthquakes in the north of China. In January the following year, people around the city of Haicheng noticed that lots of farm animals like cows and horses were nervous and refused to

go into buildings at night. In February there was a large earthquake in the area. Its centre was in Haicheng.

1. There are over 150,000 serious earthquakes annually.
2. Japan has over ten times more earthquakes annually than Britain.
3. All new buildings are safe in earthquakes.
4. If we could say where earthquakes will happen, we could rescue more people.
5. Scientists think that animals may know that an earthquake is coming.

XVII. Read the an article about four destructive forces of nature. For questions 1-8, choose from paragraphs A-D. The paragraphs may be chosen more than once.

Natural Disasters

A Wildfire near Los Angeles

Firefighters in California report that three people have died in a wildfire near Los Angeles. The fire started on Sunday, and the casualties were found early this morning. The wildfire has been classified as a type 1 wildfire, and so far it has already destroyed a large area of parkland and some property. A park ranger said that there are strong winds in the area of the fire, which are making it difficult to get the fire under control. Official warnings from environmental organisations state the concern that these powerful winds will make the fire spin, which could then turn into a fire tornado. As a result, people in several towns have already left the area and many more will leave today.

B Flooding in England

Many parts of England are flooded and under water today, following two days of violent thunderstorms and hailstorms. People in the north woke up to see that there is water everywhere, with flash floods covering the city of York and several smaller towns. According to some residents, this is the second time this year that their homes have flooded, but these flash floods were unexpected. One local explains, 'The weather is just bizarre at the moment. I'm sure storms and flooding are happening more frequently here - it's all because of global warming. I believe in it, and what's more, we are going to suffer more and more natural disasters.' Experts say that the unpredictable weather will continue for this week and that many more towns will suffer flash flooding. People should prepare themselves and their homes.

C Avalanche in the Alps

Yesterday afternoon, rescuers found a group of skiers who were missing after an avalanche occurred in the French Alps on Tuesday. The skiers were enjoying themselves when it suddenly started snowing. They were found in an area of forest near the ski resort, where they were trying to escape from the severe blizzard. There was still heavy snow on Tuesday night, which made it more difficult for the rescuers to locate the group. One witness at the rescue said, 'It is a miracle! The experts were very daring and worked tirelessly to find the group.' French police say that all the skiers are now safe and have been taken to hospital to be examined. Experts say you should not go skiing when the temperature suddenly rises because this increases the possibility of avalanches.

D Volcano interest in Sicily

Volcanologists - or people who study volcanoes - from all over the world will arrive in Sicily today to study the volcanic eruption of Mount Etna. Mount Etna is the second biggest volcano in Europe and is of great interest at the moment. The volcano is unusually active and many experts are coming to see what is happening for themselves. They will spend as much time as necessary here, and they will research the volcano and the destruction in more detail. The volcano is playing havoc in the area and affecting many locals in various ways. Lava and ash have destroyed several houses at the base of the volcano, and smoke is visible for miles. The airport at Catania is closed for safety reasons.

Which paragraph mentions

- an event which will continue over the following few days? 1.
 something that happens in cold conditions? 2.
 something out of the ordinary happening? 3.
 the number of people who died in a specific event? 4.
 an event which is attracting people to investigate it? 5.
 something which is thought to be occurring more frequently? 6.
 a demanding search expedition? 7.
 the classification of the event? 8.

Progress Test 2 (Units 3-4)

Vocabulary

I. Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

- He's very _____. He always gives presents on people's birthdays.
 a. generous b. rude c. shy
- The _____ across the field is closed again today.
 a. lane b. pavement c. footpath
- The air in cities is often _____.
 a. polluted b. stressful c. dangerous
- My dad didn't think Titanic was a _____ film but my mum did. She cried!
 a. scary b. funny c. moving
- I love _____ about the animal world.
 a. chat shows b. documentaries c. sitcoms
- Go _____ the High Street and turn left at the garage.
 a. past b. through c. along

II. Read the sentences and complete the words.

- A _____ films like *Shrek* use computer graphics instead of real actors.
- W_____s are stories about cowboys in the USA.
- A d_____y film gives real information about a topic.
- One of the most important Oscars is the a_____ for best picture.
- Oscar winners make short s_____es to thank people who worked on the film.
- S_____e f_____n films are about the future, aliens from space or space travel.
- My brother likes watching a_____ films because they are fast and exciting.
- In a di_____r film a lot of people usually die because of a terrible event like a fire.
- The Oscar c_____y is one of the most important events in Hollywood.
- A r_____c comedy is a love story that is also funny.

III. Complete the sentences with the words below. There are two words you do not need.

dull gripping moving predictable scary serious violent

- I like films about _____ subjects. They really make you think.
- My mum never watches _____ films because she doesn't like all the fighting.
- The film was so _____ that I cried at the end.
- The film was so _____. I fell asleep in the middle.
- The film was so _____ ! I knew who the killer was right at the start.

Grammar

IV. Complete the sentences. Use *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

- We _____ get up early tomorrow. It's Sunday and we don't have school.
- We _____ say anything to Mary about the birthday party. It's a surprise.
- We _____ do some shopping now. There's no food left.

4. You _____ make noise after ten o'clock at night. Your neighbours will get angry.
5. Paul _____ work so much. He earns a lot of money already.
6. You _____ do your homework tonight. You don't have school tomorrow.
7. You _____ buy a ticket before you go into the cinema.
8. You _____ put the rubbish in the rubbish bin.
9. We're going to Nick's house for dinner. We _____ take some flowers or a cake.
10. You _____ forget to switch the TV off when you go to bed.

Word Skills

V. Complete the sentences using the adjective in brackets with a correct negative prefix.

1. The room was very _____ and nobody knew where to sit. (organised)
2. The man looked very _____ after spending the night in the police station. (tidy)
3. The man was _____ to get home after being stuck in the traffic jam for hours. (patient)
4. They couldn't read the letter because the handwriting was completely _____. (legible)
5. It isn't easy to eat properly if you work _____ hours. (regular)
6. The daughter started crying but the father was _____ to her tears. (sensitive)

VI. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Unfortunately the plans for a new business project fell _____.
2. Mary's parents split _____ after 15 years together.
3. It's important for children to have someone to look _____ to.
4. He stole the old man's bag but he didn't get _____ with it.
5. She gets _____ so well with her boss and colleagues.

VII. Complete each sentence with one word from A and one word from B.

- A DIY garden pedestrian rubbish street
 B bin centre crossing lamps store

1. The traffic is dangerous here. You must use the _____.
2. Dad bought some paint at the _____. He promised to redecorate my bedroom.
3. All the _____ in our neighbourhood are broken. It's scary at night now.
4. Don't drop that paper in the street. Put it in the _____. There's one on the corner.
5. The new _____ has some lovely little trees - and they're half price.

Use of English

VIII. Complete the text with the words below.

energy countries environment letters rubbish turn off
 use

Teen Action!

In 2004, 120 young people between the ages of fourteen and seventeen from ten European ¹ _____ met in Berlin at the first Youth Eco- Parliament. Before going to Berlin, they made plans for improving the ² _____ in their own towns and villages. They focused on areas like recycling, saving ³ _____ and reducing pollution. After that they went to Berlin and discussed their plans. Then they wrote ⁴ _____ giving ideas for doing that, locally, nationally and globally. Here are some of the things they think we should do:

- recycle more ⁵ _____ (for example glass, paper, plastic, metal)
- use our cars less - use public transport and bikes or walk
- stop polluting rivers and streams
- pick up rubbish in parks and in the street
- save energy - ⁶ _____ lights and TVs when we're not using them
- don't use too many pesticides on farms
- use recycled paper
- ⁷ _____ shopping bags instead of plastic bags

IX. Rewrite the sentences keeping the meaning the same. Use two to five words including the word in brackets.

1. The ending of the film was very disappointing. (WITH)
He was _____ the ending of the film.
2. Of all the films I saw last year, no other film made me more frightened than that one. (THE)
That _____ that I saw last year.
3. The result of the Best Actor Oscar was unpredictable. (PREDICT)
They _____ was going to win the Oscar for Best Actor.
4. I think I'm too short to be an actor. (ENOUGH)
I don't think I _____ to be an actor.
5. In the past, the special effects in films weren't as good as they are today. (THAN)
The special effects in films these days _____ in the past.
6. She really hates westerns and war films. (STAND)
She _____ westerns and war films.
7. I really love comedies and I always buy the DVD after I see the film in the cinema. (BIG)
I _____ comedies and I always buy the DVD after I see the film in the cinema.
8. She found the documentary film about endangered animals very moving. (MOVED)
She _____ the documentary film about endangered animals.

X. Read the text below, and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

Natural Destruction

For all the talk of what humankind has done to cause destruction to the planet, we should not forget that nature itself is a ¹ _____ force, capable of doing damage on a huge scale. The greenhouse ² _____ and the hole in the ozone layer are indeed made worse by the ³ _____ society we live in. However, we must remember that there are certain species of plant and animal which, quite naturally, ⁴ _____ off gases that are very harmful to the atmosphere. And only 50 years ago in London, hundreds of people die from the ⁵ _____ which hung over the River Thames. What is interesting here is that smoke and gases from industry, vehicles and fossil ⁶ _____ were ingredients in this deadly mixture. The other vital ingredient, though, was the completely natural fog, and who would have thought that could be ⁷ _____?

In the early days of the industrial revolution, poets, painters and philosophers described how the polluted ⁸ _____ skies made them think of the end of the world. Towards the end of the nineteenth century, the volcanic eruption of Krakatoa nearly made it happen. Thousands of tons of dust and ash were thrown into the air and, for years afterwards, there were red sunsets caused by the light filtering through this natural pollution. Remembering scientists' pet theory about the dinosaurs ⁹ _____ out because of a huge volcanic eruption, we were lucky that humankind ¹⁰ _____ this time.

1. A. heavy B. muscular C. powerful D. natural
2. A. effect B. phenomenon C. syndrome D. situation
3. A. commercialised B. industrialised C. atmospheric D. natural
4. A. take B. give C. throw D. run
5. A. smog B. pollutant C. sewerage D. oxygen
6. A. flames B. fumes C. fires D. fuels
7. A. poisoned B. harmful C. environmental D. chemical
8. A. urban B. rural C. busy D. global
9. A. killing B. dying C. fading D. going
10. A. managed B. survived C. protected D. saved

Reading

XI. Read the text, and answer the questions.

Become a TV Star

So, you want to be on television? Read about three different ways you can make your dream come true!

Who Knows?

Have you ever wanted to be on a TV game show? If you think you've got good general knowledge and you're confident enough to appear on TV in front of millions of people, just fill in our application form. You could be a winner on Channel 7's new game show *Who Knows?* There will be twelve weekly shows and the winner of each show will go on to play a final competition to win two million pounds.

Watching You!

The producers of the reality show *Watching You!* are looking for ten new people to live in the famous house for ten weeks. Are you funny and talkative? Are you interested in other people? Would you like the chance to become a big star? Send your application before 7 November, and you could be invited to the auditions in London and Manchester.

Children's Hour

As viewers know, Dani Byers has left Channel 7's *Children's Hour* to make a film in Hollywood. So we need someone to take her place as a presenter on the show. We're looking for someone who is enthusiastic, intelligent and who loves children. Is that you? Apply now and come for a voice test.

Which show ...

1. will be shorter than three months?
2. can make people very famous?
3. only needs one person?
4. offers a lot of money?
5. wants someone who likes talking?

XII. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

The Oscars

A _____ The Oscars award ceremony is one of the most famous ceremonies in the world, and is watched live on TV in over 200 countries. The first ceremony happened in Hollywood in 1929, and all of the prizes were for silent films. For the first ten years, the results were given to newspapers before the ceremony. However, since 1941, the names of the winners have been a secret until the last moment.

B _____ No one is exactly sure where the name 'Oscars' came from. One story is that in 1931, the director of the Academy thought that the golden award looked like her uncle Oscar - and the name stayed!

C _____ The Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences has over 6,000 members (actors, directors, producers, etc.). Each year, they vote for the winners in 25 categories. The most important categories are Best Film, Best Director, Best Actress and Best Actor.

D _____ No one is very interested in what the men wear (they usually come in a dinner jacket or a suit), but the big fashion houses, like Chanel and Dior, try to persuade the most popular female stars to wear their dresses. The stars usually get the dresses for free, and they usually look great. But there are some bad choices too!

E _____ The speeches that the winners make when they accept their Oscars are often rather boring, as they're usually just a list of people they want to thank (including their mum). The winners often get very emotional - it can sometimes be almost impossible to understand what they're saying.

Task 1. Match headings 1-6 with paragraphs A-E. There is one heading that you do not need.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Gratitude and tears | 4. The most famous winner |
| 2. Dress to impress | 5. Deciding the winner |

3. Early days 6. A mystery

Task 2. Read the text again, and answer the questions.

1. In the 1930s, how did people know the result before the ceremony?

2. Whose uncle looked like the prize that was awarded to the winners?

3. Who votes for the winners?

4. How much do the female stars usually spend on their outfits for the ceremony?

5. Why are the acceptance speeches often boring?

Task 3. Match the singular form of the underlined words in the text with the definitions below.

1. the decision or score at the end of a competition
2. a very formal public event
3. a formal talk that you give in public
4. something that the winners of a competition receives
5. somebody who comes first in a competition

XIII. Complete the text with the sentences A-G below. There is one extra sentence you do not need.

A. Also, in certain territories fishing will have to be banned in order to let the populations of sea creatures rebuild themselves.

B. In the future, we need to rely less on fishing in the wild and more on so- called aquaculture.

C. We are currently fishing for almost 8,000 different species in order to put them on our tables.

D. For example, many of the Pacific Ocean countries have seafood and sea plants as their basic diet.

E. Scientists say overfishing (catching too much fish), pollution and other environmental factors are response.

F. Their findings indicate that shrimps in sweet and soy sauce on the menu of your favourite takeaway will become just a memory.

G. Furthermore, if some species are wiped out, the food chains they belonged to may be broken.

SEE YOU, SEAFOOD!

Fourteen researchers from Canada, Panama, Sweden, Britain and the US have spent four years analysing ocean ecosystems, fish population and fishing records. Their findings, which

have just been published, make frightening reading. They predict that by the year 2050, the world's seafood will have disappeared. ¹ _____

According to the study, the number of marine species has been declining much faster in recent decades and if it continues to do so, there will soon be nothing for us to do to restore the diversity of these ecosystems. We have already lost nearly 30% of all the known species. As we continue to consume more and more from the ocean, many more species will become extinct. ² _____ And scientists believe that they will all be gone by 2050 unless something is done about it.

It is important that we find the causes before it's too late. ³ _____ Because of them, the number of ecologically important species is constantly decreasing and so is the ocean's ability to produce seafood and stay healthy. Some plans for reversing this trend are already being made. ⁴ _____ Just like agriculture, which farm things on the land, aquaculture farms things in the water for the purpose of mass consumption. And so fish, shrimp, oysters and other underwater species will simply be grown in controlled waters. ⁵ _____

Why should we care? For many reasons. First of all, if the balance of an ecosystem is threatened then so is its working. For instance, the water is not cleaned and filtered by the creatures. ⁶ _____ Moreover, thousands of people around the world rely on seafood as their basic food. And finally, the world's economy will be in trouble if everyone who works in the fishing industry loses their jobs.

UNIT 5: Ambition

5A. Vocabulary

• Jobs

I. Complete the definitions with the jobs below.

pilot photographer stunt performer cleaner journalist
groundkeeper locksmith architect solicitor hairdresser

1. A(n) _____ is a person who designs houses or other buildings.
2. The work of a(n) _____ involves cleaning the rooms and furniture inside a building.
3. A(n) _____ is a person whose job is to look after a park or sports ground.
4. When you would like to have your hair done, cut or dyed, you can come to meet a(n) _____.
5. When you cannot enter your house because you have lost the key to the front door, you can ask a(n) _____ to help you.
6. A(n) _____ collects news and writes it for newspapers, magazines or television.
7. In Britain, a(n) _____ is a lawyer who gives legal advice, prepares legal documents and represents clients in the courts.
8. He is excellent in martial arts, and very brave – he often plays the most dangerous scenes



for actors. The best job for him is a(n) _____.

9. Mr Tri is a high school teacher, but in his free time he often takes pictures as a hobby - he's an amateur _____.

10. My dad has been trained to fly an aircraft - he's a(n) _____ .

II. Complete the sentences with the word in brackets using correct suffix: -er, -ist or -ian.

1. He's a _____. He plays music. (music)
2. She's a _____. She builds houses. (build)
3. He's a _____. He photographs famous people. (photograph)
4. She's a _____. She sings. (sing)
5. He's a _____. He writes novels. (novel)
6. He's a _____. He does technical work in a laboratory. (technique)
7. She's a _____. She's doing a tour of the USA. (tour)
8. She's a _____. She plays the guitar. (guitar)

III. Complete the sentences with the words below. There is one word you do not need.

astronaut air-traffic controller flight attendant mechanic secretary
surgeon

1. I'm a(n) _____. I fix cars when they break down.
2. I'm a(n) _____. I work night shifts in Accident and Emergency at the hospital.
3. I'm a trainee _____. I help planes land at the airport.
4. I'm a(n) _____. I look after people on a plane.
5. I'm a legal _____. I work in an office doing paperwork and administration.

IV. Label the photos with the words below. Then match the gender-neutral words to the jobs. Number 1 has been done for you as example.

actress fireman headmaster policewoman postman
salesman spokesman sportswoman stewardess

Gender-neutral words

athlete flight attendant firefighter headteacher actor
police officer postal worker shop assistant spokesperson





1. *stewardess / flight attendant*

- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.
- 7.
- 8.
- 9.

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the gender-neutral job titles in Exercise IV.

1. _____ are investigating the crime.
2. The _____ forgot her lines during the play.
3. We asked the _____ what time the plane would arrive.
4. The student was sent to see the _____.
5. They interviewed the _____ after she won the race.
6. A(n) _____ made a statement on behalf of the company.
7. We asked a(n) _____ the price of the phone.
8. _____ rescued five people from the building.
9. I asked the _____ if he had any letters for me.

• Describing jobs & Work activities

VI. Read the job adverts. Use the words in bold to complete the vocabulary tables.

Telesales operator: Working in our busy call centre, you will answer the **phone** and deal with the **public**. The work is **challenging**, but rewarding. **Shift** work: either 07.00-15.00 or 15.00-23.00.

Bank clerk: **Well-paid** job for an experienced clerk. Working mostly on your **own**, you will be in **charge** of the reception desk and serve **customers**. Salary negotiable.

Construction workers: Skilled and **unskilled** workers required: plasterers, electricians, carpenters, labourers. Work **part-time** or full-time. (**35-hour** week) **Fruit-pickers:** Fruit-pickers needed for farm in Norfolk. Working in a **team** of ten people. You can **earn** up to £9.50 an **hour**.

Activities at work

answer the ¹ _____	deal with the ² _____
use a computer	work on your ³ _____
do paperwork	work in a ⁴ _____
do manual work	be in ⁵ _____ of
serve ⁶ _____	supervise people

Hours of work

work ⁷ _____	do ⁸ _____ work
work nine to five	work a 35- ⁹ _____ week

Pay

salary

¹¹ _____ (money)

well-¹⁰

£6 an ¹² _____

badly-paid

Describing work

stressful

busy

fun

tedious

¹³

skilled

menial

easy

rewarding

¹⁴

VII. Complete the sentences with the below.

well-paid

supervise

skilled

shift work

salary

on your own

menial

in charge of

1. You need special training to do a _____ job.
2. If you are a manager, you often have to _____ people.
3. She earns a lot of money. Her job is _____.
4. A _____ job is often boring and badly-paid.
5. A manager is _____ a group of workers.
6. If you're not in a team, you work _____.
7. Your _____ is the money you are paid for doing your job.
8. If you do _____, you don't always work at the same times each day.

VIII. Match the sentence halves.

1. I have to serve _____ a. with the public.
2. Because the work is tedious _____ b. I am often bored.
3. We have to do _____ c. the work is rewarding.
4. You must be able to deal _____ d. on weekdays.
5. I feel happy because _____ e. customers on the shop.
6. I work nine-to-five _____ f. paperwork after every meeting.

IX. Complete the sentences with the correct pair of the work activities and their characteristics in the correct order and the correct word form.

use a computer / stressful

earn a lot of money / tiring

travel a lot / varied

answer the phone / repetitive

be on your feet / creative

work with children / rewarding

deal with the public / challenging

1. She's a receptionist at a big hotel. She _____ all day and I think her work is _____.
2. When you are a hairdresser, you can make different hairstyles for various tastes. Your job is _____ but you have to _____ most of the time.
3. Many young people would like to become a police officer. He has to _____, and arrests criminals - the job can be _____ and dangerous.
4. A dentist can _____ but the job is sometimes _____ - both physically and mentally.
5. Teachers _____, and they have to work at home after school finishes. However, I think the teaching career is _____ because their students can become good citizens later.
6. My brother writes apps for computers and smartphones. He works around the clock and _____ all day. I think his job is _____.
7. My uncle is a travel agent. He _____ to many regions and countries in the world. He meets different and interesting tourists of all ages. I think he has a _____ career.

X. Match the sentences with the activities below. There are two activities that you do not need.

brainstorm ideas

chair meetings

deal with customers

keep up with new technology

upload data

meet deadlines

operate machinery

report on sales figures

1. 'Hello. Vinamilk Company. How can I help you?'
2. 'Here are the files that need to be given to the design department today.'
3. 'OK, everyone. Let's look at the first item on the agenda.'
4. 'Last month, we sold 10,600 items. That's a 5% increase on the previous month.'
5. 'I'm going on a training course tomorrow to learn about the new software package.'
6. A: 'What about the logo?' B: 'An animal would be good.'
- A: 'How about a lion?' B: 'Or a cheetah?'

XI. Complete the sentences with the words below.

dead-end

highly skilled

repetitive

varied

stressful

high-flying

challenging

worthwhile

1. I'd like to be a charity worker, so that I can feel that I'm doing something _____ with my life.
2. Many countries around the world only allow _____ foreigners to come and work there.
3. I think Daniel is finding his new job too easily. They need to give him some more _____ things to do.
4. I get bored quickly, so I'd need a job where the day-to-day work is quite _____.
5. Some people don't mind having _____ jobs if their free time activities are their real interest in life.
6. I'm not exactly sure what my sister does to earn such a large salary, but it's some _____ job in a big bank.
7. Fortunately, a lot of the most _____ work in industry is now done by robots.
8. Doctors help people who are ill, but they often get ill themselves because the job is so _____.

• Collocations: jobs

XII. Complete the sentences with the verbs below with the correct form. Each verb can be used only once.

offer

have

look for

fill in

take

join

send

put

1. You have to _____ a month's notice of any holiday you would like to take to the company.
2. I _____ the application form and sent it off.
3. They _____ an advertisement in 'The Morning News', offering a high salary for the right person.
4. They _____ him a very good job, but he turned it down.
5. He's _____ a few days off before the wedding.
6. My brother _____ a great team of young, energetic computer programmers, and all the crew did a magnificent job.
7. She's _____ her master's degree in Economics from Viet Nam National University in Ho Chi Minh City.
8. All three of my cousins are _____ work in our city.

• Personal qualities

XIII. Find the opposites of these personality adjectives in the word square.

1. confident
2. hard-working
3. mean
4. optimistic
5. polite
6. patient
7. quiet
8. serious
9. unkind
10. unfriendly

I	M	P	A	T	I	E	N	T	G
Q	U	E	T	V	N	J	O	A	A
L	K	S	H	G	R	Q	S	L	D

X	S	S	J	E	U	z	H	K	X
F	R	I	E	N	D	L	Y	A	Y
U	F	M	I	E	E	A	E	T	E
N	G	I	E	R	L	Z	A	I	W
N	K	S	R	O	S	Y	D	V	L
Y	Y	T	M	U	A	0	C	E	B
M	E	I	H	s	B	K	I	N	D
Z	W	C	F	O	X	N	H	K	N

Across:

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

Down:

4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____
10. _____

XIV. Use the adjectives from the word square to complete the sentences.

- It was very _____ of you to pay for my coffee.
- After waiting over half an hour for the bus, Nick began to get _____.
- All the students were very _____ towards me on my first day at my new school.
- She is too _____ to help me with the housework.
- It was very _____ of you to help me with my homework.
- She's a bit _____. That's why she didn't talk to many people at the party.
- It's _____ to talk with your mouth full.
- Sally isn't very _____. She prefers to listen to other people.
- Phong is very _____. He always thinks things will get worse!
- Nam's very _____. He's always telling jokes.

XV. Complete the reactions with the adjectives below.

*arrogant generous hard-working impatient mean
shy*

- 'I'm more intelligent than you.' - 'You're very _____.'
- 'I'm paying for your tickets.' - 'Thanks, that's _____ of you.'
- 'Hurry up! It's nearly 7.30!' - 'Don't be _____.'
- 'She looks nice.' - 'Don't be _____. Go and talk to her!'
- 'I'm a teacher and I've also got a weekend job.' - 'Wow. You're _____.'
- 'Ken is really ugly.' - 'No, he isn't. Don't be _____.'

• Key phrases

XVI. Choose the correct answers.

- What we need is a more effective transport system, _____, more buses and trains, and fewer cars.
a. for example b. in my opinion c. in other words
- I want to buy her something really special for her 18th birthday. _____ to get her a nice birthday present.
a. What I mean is b. That's because c. What is more
- 'That photograph doesn't look like you.' - '_____ it isn't me - it's my sister.'
a. What is more b. That's because c. Not only that
- My sister has been fortunate to find a career that she loves and, _____, she gets well paid for it.
a. on the other hand b. what is more c. in spite of this
- Her husband sometimes drinks a lot. _____, she loved him so much.
a. Moreover b. Although c. In spite of this

6. Coffee, tea, and _____ will be served in the shop.
 a. not only that b. in other words c. therefore
7. _____, footballers are paid too much in comparison with engineers or doctors.
 a. For example b. Nevertheless c. In my opinion
8. In the electronics industry, _____, 5000 jobs are being lost.
 a. for instance b. what is more c. that's because

5B. Grammar

• *will and going to*

I. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *will* or *going to* and the verbs in brackets.

- Are you tired? I _____ (take) you home.
- I _____ (watch) a DVD tonight. Do you want to come round?
- What _____ you _____ (wear) for your first day at work?
- We haven't got any sugar. I _____ (get) some in town later.
- Look at the time! We _____ (be) late.
- Oh, no! That cyclist _____ (hit) the black dog.
- I _____ (see) you later.
- _____ you _____ (ask) him round for a drink?

II. Complete the short exchanges, using the correct form of *will* or *going to*.

- A It's looking very dark outside.
B Yes, it _____ rain.
- A It's a bit cold in this room.
B OK. I _____ close the window.
- A Can you come out this evening?
B I _____ know until I ask my parents.
- A Are you doing anything on Sunday morning?
B No. I _____ stay in bed all morning.
- A The white shirt is €15, and the blue shirt is €20.
B I _____ have the blue one, please.
- A Have you got any plans for the summer?
B No. We _____ do anything this year.

III. Complete the dialogue. Use *will* or *going to* and the verbs in brackets.

- Nick ¹ _____ (you / come) to the cinema with me and Rob tomorrow?
- Mai No, I'm not. I ² _____ (spend) the evening with my sister.
- Nick Really? Well, why don't you both come to the cinema? I ³ _____ (get) two extra tickets.
- Mai We've got other plans. We ⁴ _____ (have) dinner in a pizza restaurant.
- Nick What time ⁵ _____ you _____ (go) out?
- Mai About 8.00. Why?
- Nick Maybe we can meet later. I ⁶ _____ (phone) you after the film.
- Mai OK.

• *First conditional*

IV. Complete the first conditional sentences. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If I _____ (not go) out this morning, I _____ (clean) the house.
- If they _____ (not arrive) soon, I _____ (be) angry.
- If you _____ (learn) English, you _____ (get) a better job.
- He _____ (be) late if he _____ (not hurry).
- Jane _____ (go) to university if she _____ (pass) her exams.

V. Complete the first conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If he _____ (eat) too much, he won't sleep well.
2. I'll feed his cat while he's away if he _____ (ask) me.
3. We won't get home before it's dark if we _____ (leave) after 5.30 p.m.
4. If you _____ (work) harder, you'll do better at school.
5. If it _____ (rain) heavily this week, the river will be flooded.
6. She'll be angry if he _____ (not come) to her party.

VI. Complete the first conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If you give me your number, I _____ (call) you tomorrow.
2. They _____ (not buy) a new car if it costs too much.
3. If you don't tell your parents where you are, they _____ (be) worried.
4. You _____ (have) a great time if you come to the party.
5. What _____ you _____ (do) if it rains tomorrow?
6. If we can't find a hotel, where _____ we _____ (sleep)?

VII. Complete the first conditional sentences with the verbs below.

lie down not be able not turn round not wait open rain

1. If you're hot, I _____ the window.
2. We _____ for you if you're late.
3. If it _____ tomorrow, we won't go to the beach.
4. You _____ to sleep if you drink too much coffee.
5. You'll feel better if you _____.
6. If you _____, you won't see him.

VIII. Match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. If I don't go to bed soon ... | _____ | A. will you invite me? |
| 2. I won't pass my exam ... | _____ | B. I'll be tired tomorrow. |
| 3. My brother will help me ... | _____ | C. if we use his computer? |
| 4. If you have a party ... | _____ | D. if my homework is too difficult. |
| 5. We won't have a barbecue ... | _____ | E. if it rains tomorrow. |
| 6. Will your brother be angry ... | _____ | F. if I don't study hard. |

IX. Complete the first conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If you _____ (catch) the first bus, you _____ (not be) late.
2. I _____ (not get) wet if I _____ (take) an umbrella.
3. Rob _____ (do) a computer course if he _____ (not find) a job.
4. If the weather _____ (be) nice, we _____ (have) a barbecue.
5. My sister _____ (not pass) her exams if she _____ (not study).
6. If they _____ (lose) tomorrow, they _____ (not play) in the final.

• Defining relative clauses

X. Choose the correct words.

1. Unskilled work is work **which** / **who** requires no training.
2. He's the man **who** / **which** interviewed me for the job.
3. They're the neighbours **who** / **whose** car was stolen.
4. A laboratory is a place **which** / **where** scientists work.
5. Anna is the pianist **who** / **whose** accompanies the show.
6. She works as part of a team **where** / **which** is in Ha Noi.
7. That's the hospital **where** / **which** treats cancer best in our country.
8. That's the woman **who** / **whose** is in charge of paying the salaries.

XI. Complete the sentences with *who*, *where*, or *which*.

1. There's the park _____ we played as children.
2. I've just bought a new gadget _____ tells you when you need to buy more food for my family.
3. She is the person _____ makes all the phone calls in the company.
4. That's the teacher _____ helped me with my English.
5. That's the shop _____ I used to buy my clothes when I was younger.

XII. Choose the correct words.

1. That's the woman **whose** / **who** works a 60-hour week.
2. Jane is the IT consultant **who** / **whose** fixed our computers.
3. She's the woman **who** / **which** applied for the cleaning job.
4. India is the place **which** / **where** a lot of call centres are located.
5. Unskilled work is work **which** / **who** requires no qualifications.
6. He's the police officer **who** / **whose** car was involved in an accident.
7. He works in the department **where** / **which** my aunt is in charge of.
8. That's the building site **where** / **whose** my brother works.

XIII. Complete the sentences with the relative pronoun / adverb *who, which, whose* or *where*.

1. A successful writer is a person _____ books are published.
2. A rucksack is a bag _____ you wear on your back.
3. A building site is a place _____ houses are built.
4. A plumber is a person _____ repairs water pipes.
5. A surgery is a place _____ doctors see their patients.
6. Flip flops are shoes _____ you wear on the beach.

XIV. Complete the sentences using *who, which, whose* or *where*.

1. David was the man _____ liked to work hard and play hard.
2. This is the salary _____ he earns at the moment.
3. Are these the dogs _____ guard the building?
4. Is this the building _____ your dad works?
5. These are the people _____ skills are right for the job.
6. The company _____ my mother works has offices in the city centre.
7. We need fruit pickers _____ can work in July and August.
8. They're looking for a resort _____ has a swimming pool and a spa.
9. She's a young doctor _____ father was a famous surgeon.
10. Is there a shop near here _____ I can buy a newspaper?

XV. Rewrite the sentences that are incorrect.

1. He's the boy whose good at football.

2. A comedy is a film which makes you laugh.

3. A hospital is a place where ill people go there.

4. A musician is a person who he plays music.

5. That's the girl who her mother is a dentist.

6. A coat is an item which you wear it in the winter.

XVI. Combine each pair of sentences with a relative clause. Use the words *who*, *which*, *whose* or *where*.

1. That's the car. It was parked outside our house.

2. A laboratory is a place. Scientists do experiments there.

3. She's the receptionist. She answered my call.

4. That's the man. His dog scared me.

5. That's the woman. Her daughter is in my class.

6. He's the shop assistant. He served me.

7. That's the sports shop. I bought my tracksuit there.

8. That's the jacket. I bought it in the sales.

XVII. Complete the sentences with the correct relative pronouns and the phrases below.

you can see plays

people who are ill will go

works on the building site

comes from cows

grows crops

1. A labourer is a person .

2. Milk is a drink .

3. A hospital is a place .

4. A farmer is a person .

5. A theatre is a place .

XVIII. Complete the text with *who*, *whose*, *which* and *where*.

A Dream Job

It's a job ¹ _____ attracted over 34,000 applications from around the world. Everyone ² _____ applied had to send in a 60-second video ³ _____ explained why they wanted the job and what skills they had to offer. And what was this amazing job? Caretaker of Hamilton Island, in the Great Barrier Reef. It's a place ⁴ _____ it's sunny and warm all year round, and ⁵ _____ probably has the most beautiful coral reefs in the world. The person ⁶ _____ got the job had to explore the islands nearby, and report back to the world about their experiences. The sixteen people ⁷ _____ videos most impressed the employers came to Australia for an interview. The lucky man ⁸ _____ was finally chosen for the job was Ben Southall from the UK. Unfortunately for him, the job was only for six months.

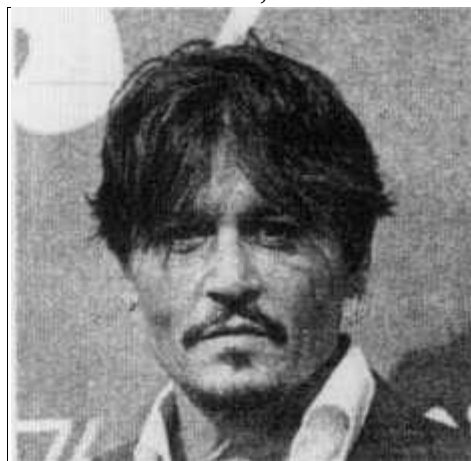
• **Non-defining relative clauses**

XIX. Choose the correct answers.

1. His car, **which** / **who** was new, broke down.
2. The actor, **whose** / **who** films won both the Oscar and BAFTA, is really talented.
3. The song, **who** / **which** he wrote in ten minutes, made millions.
4. The girl, **whose** / **who** was ten, was his cousin.
5. The new shopping centre, **where** / **which** took two years to build, is excellent.

XX. Read the text, and choose the correct relative pronouns.

Johnny Depp, ¹**who** / **which** / **who** / **where** was born in Kentucky in 1963, is a well-known American actor. He first became famous when he starred in the TV series 21 Jump Street, in ²**who** / **which** / **whose** / **where** he played a young police officer. This role, ³**who** / **which** / **whose** / **where** he played for nearly four years, turned him into a teen idol. Later, Depp played the title role in the film Edward Scissorhands, ⁴**who** / **which** / **whose** / **where** was directed by Tim Burton, ⁵**who** / **which** / **whose** / **where** partner is the actress Helena Bonham Carter. Depp has two children with his partner Vanessa Paradis, and they divide their time between their five homes, including a villa in the south of France called Le Plan de la Tour, ⁶**who** / **which** / **whose** / **where** Depp makes his own wine.



XXI. Complete the sentences using *who*, *which*, *whose* or *where*.

1. Her job, _____ is busy and stressful, is not very well-paid.
2. My parents' house, _____ I grew up, is close to Tan Son Nhat Airport.
3. They were married for 50 years, _____ is a very long time.
4. Last summer he went to Da Lat, _____ he worked as a fruit picker.
5. Mai in my class, _____ brother is really good-looking, is very popular at school.
6. The woman _____ was the company director apologised for the mistake.
7. Michael Jackson, _____ is world-famous, died in 2009.
8. The nursery _____ looks after my younger sister is fantastic for young children.
9. My cousin's teacher, _____ name is Mr Nam, thinks there should be more equipment for the school.
10. The farm _____ they grow strawberries is just outside our city.

XXII. Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1. The park, _____ we often played football, has been redeveloped.
2. This computer, _____ has the latest software, cost me a fortune.
3. The man _____ spoke to him at the conference was the director.
4. Her new dress, _____ her mother hated, cost £ 100.
5. The woman, _____ dog won a competition, was interviewed on TV.

XXIII. Rewrite the following sentences. Use the sentences in brackets to form non-defining relative sentences.

1. The restaurant on that street serves excellent food. (My father used to work there.)

2. Mr and Mrs Lam live next door to us. (Their daughter is a pop star.)

3. The new block of flats will be finished next week. (It has 25 floors.)

4. J.K. Rowling is a billionaire. (She wrote the Harry Potter books.)

5. My dad's new car is very fast. (It costs a lot of money.)

6. Our English teacher speaks Vietnamese as well. (Her name is Miss Oakes.)

7. Phu Quoc is a beautiful island. (We have a small house there.)

XXIV. Complete the sentences with the relative clauses below.

where we usually go on holiday

who comes from Colombia

who was born in Russia in 1987

which was invented in the US in 1951

whose films include *Titanic*

which is on the fourth floor

1. Our flat, _____, is in the middle of town.

2. Maria Sharapova, _____, was the world's best female



tennis player in 2005-2007.

3. Shakira, _____, released her first album in 1995.

4. The bar code, _____, is widely used in supermarkets and shops nowadays.

5. Leonardo DiCaprio, _____, believes in protecting the environment.

6. Phu Quoc, _____, is in the Gulf of Thailand.

XXV. Invent relative clauses to complete the sentences. Use the questions to help you.

1. Steven Spielberg, _____, was born in the USA. (What film did Spielberg direct?)

2. Italy, _____, is in Central Europe. (What's Italy famous for?)

3. Champagne, _____, is a very popular drink. (Where is champagne produced?)

4. Jennifer Aniston, _____, starred in 'Friends'. (Who's her ex-husband?)

5. 10 Downing Street, _____, is in the centre of London. (Who lives there?)

6. Madonna, _____, was born in Michigan. (What does Madonna do?)

XXVI. Complete the sentences 1-6 using the clauses A-F below. Add a relative pronoun only if necessary.

1. Camp Nou stadium, _____, can hold nearly 99,000 fans.
2. The hotel _____ burned down last week.
3. I wish I hadn't lost the phone number of the girl _____.
4. I think I've lost the book _____.
5. Covent Garden, _____, is a popular place for tourists to visit.
6. Nguyễn Ngọc Tư, _____, does not like appearing in public.
 - A. my best friend gave me for my birthday
 - B. I met at my cousin's wedding
 - C. famous novel is *The Floating Lives - Cánh đồng bất tận*
 - D. Barcelona play their home matches
 - E. used to be a fruit and vegetables market
 - F. we stayed at in Nha Trang last summer

5C. Word Skills

• Prefixes

I. Match the prefixes i-v with their definitions a-e. Then complete the sentences using the words in brackets and the correct prefix.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------|---------------------|
| i. auto- | _____ | a. many |
| ii. micro- | _____ | b. less than; below |
| iii. multi- | _____ | c. before |
| iv. pre- | _____ | d. self |
| v. sub- | _____ | e. very small |

1. The invention of the _____ was the first use to produce portable calculators in 1967. (chip)
2. Lewis Hamilton, who was the Formula 1 champion at the age of 23, has already written his _____. (biography)
3. They were invited to the _____ of the film the day before it opened to the public. (view)
4. I like watching foreign films if they have _____ in English. (titles)
5. They work for a large _____ company. (national)

II. Match the prefixes 1-6 with the words a-f. Then complete the sentences with these words.

- | | | |
|----------|-------|----------------|
| 1. mini | _____ | a. millionaire |
| 2. ex | _____ | b. circle |
| 3. auto | _____ | c. titles |
| 4. multi | _____ | d. girlfriend |
| 5. semi | _____ | e. break |
| 6. sub | _____ | f. focus |

1. You don't have to touch the lens because the camera has _____.
2. Tom hasn't got time for a long holiday, so he's going to take a _____.
3. Mark Zuckerberg, who started Facebook, became a _____ at the age of 23.
4. We put the chairs in a _____ so that everyone could see the speaker.
5. Most English students don't need to read the _____ when they watch a film in English.
6. My brother is hoping to get back together with his _____.

III. Complete the uncompleted words in the sentences by adding the correct prefix below. Make sure that you have to correct spelling.

sub- mis- post- semi- over-
co- re- ex- multi- mini-

1. She still has a good relationship with her _____ husband in the taking care of their children.
2. Don't _____ cook your food as this can lower the vitamin and mineral content.
3. You'll have to _____ do this piece of writing because there are so many mistakes.
4. 'Rachel, you must have _____ understood her! Jane would never say something like that.'
5. The teacher had arranged the desks in a(n) _____ circle.
6. The old man had to spend the night in a sleeping bag in _____ zero temperatures.
7. When you visit a pagoda or a temple, you shouldn't wear shorts or a(n) _____ skirt.
8. The government is attempting to stimulate the economy by attracting _____ national corporations.
9. In his book, he modestly emphasised the role of the crew, the rescue team and the _____ pilot.
10. The country was ruined by the war, and now people are taking part in the _____ war reconstruction.

IV. Complete the sentences with the prefixes below.

micro- ex- auto- mono- multi-

1. They got divorced two years ago. She is now his _____ wife.
2. One day I will write my _____ biography - it will be all about me.
3. If you're in a(n) _____ lingual class, everyone has the same first language.
4. A(n) _____ skilled worker can do many different things.
5. Most kitchens today have a(n) _____ wave oven.

V. Match the prefixes below with the nouns, and then complete the sentences with these nouns in the correct form.

multi- mini- ex- auto- co- sub- semi- pseudo- (= false)

- a. _____ biography e. _____ zero
b. _____ footballer f. _____ founder
c. _____ skirt g. _____ science
d. _____ vitamins h. _____ conductor

1. My aunt only drinks mineral water and takes _____ every day.
2. Pele is probably the most famous _____ in the world.
3. Mark Twain wrote an _____ that could only be published 100 years after his death.
4. Mark Zuckerberg is the _____ of Facebook.
5. Mountain climbers have to cope with _____ temperatures.
6. _____ first became fashionable in the 1960s.
7. Many people consider astrology to be a _____ .
8. Most _____ used in computers are made from silicon.

VI. Match the prefixes with the definitions. Then complete the word in each sentence, using these prefixes.

micro- bio- phono- photo- tele- thermo-

- a. connected with living things
- b. very small
- c. connected with light
- d. connected with sound
- e. over a long distance
- f. connected with heat

1. A _____ metric scanner is a device that identifies people by their fingertips or their eyes.
2. There's a _____ chip inside every computer.
3. Mr Tan, my French teacher, is also an expert in the _____logy of French.
4. The process by which plants use sunlight to make food is called _____ synthesis.
5. Do you need to use a _____ scope to see that star?
6. The water's too hot. You should turn the _____ stat down.

5D. Reading

I. Read the interview with a singer. Match the information in the statements 1-9 to the paragraphs A-D. Then decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

A. You recently went to Greece to play with a band - how did that happen?

Shortly before I finished university, I got a call from a bass player living in Greece who wanted a singer for the summer. They were playing in a bar in a beautiful harbour town. He got my number from my singing teacher, who couldn't do it. He thought it would be a great opportunity for me to gain confidence and to sing somewhere else than in London bars. It was something I jumped at - a few days later I was on the plane. It was quite spontaneous.

B. Well, the best things usually are. Was singing away from London something you had always wanted to do?

To be honest, I'd never really thought about it before. It was perfect timing though, as I didn't have a clue what I was going to do after finishing my studies. It was a fantastic opportunity I couldn't miss. Plus, I can't say that I was sad to leave behind the smoky bars of London for a while. Since then, I've also played in Venice and toured around Italy and Germany. I think my time spent in Greece gave me the confidence to do this, though.

C. Well, I can believe that. How did you find the change of atmosphere - going from London bars to Greek ones?

It was great. Greece was breathtaking - beautiful mountains and flowers as far as the eye could see. The weather was great, too. It's much nicer spending evenings outside by the sea than in a smelly pub in the middle of London. I think the people were a bit more relaxed, too - not stressed by the fast city life like those I sing to at home. I also found the audiences more attractive in Greece, which did wonders for my confidence as a singer.

D. Did the time you spent away teach you anything else?

It taught me that I could go away from home on my own and be able to cope. I'd never been away from home for more than two weeks before and always with friends or family, so I grew up a lot while I was away. It was a positive experience in so many ways.

1. Before going to Greece, Kate had fixed plans for her future.
2. Kate enjoyed the atmosphere in Greece.
3. Her stay in Greece encouraged Kate to travel more.
4. Kate thought a lot about accepting the offer to go to Greece.
5. Thanks to her stay in Greece, Kate became more independent.
6. Kate was recommended to the band by a friend.
7. Kate was a little unhappy about leaving London.
8. People in Greece listened to Kate's songs carefully and with interest.
9. Kate was offered the job in Greece for one year.

II. Read the text, and answer the questions.

Meet an Australian Park Ranger

More than 400,000 tourists visit the Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park and famous Uluru Rock in Australia every year. Rob Dickins is a park ranger. He tells us about his work.

✓ **It's like the movies ... sometimes!**

Rangers have to do many boring things, like preparing fences, or writing reports. But sometimes, life feels like an action movie. Yesterday, for example, a hiker's camp stove set

fire to some dry grass. I burned my hands when I was helping the firefighters, but if we hadn't acted quickly, the fire would have killed many plants and animals. The accident wouldn't have happened if the hiker had followed the rules. He shouldn't have lit a stove in the park, but he wanted some hot coffee.

✓ **We save people's lives, too.**

In 2009, a walker got lost in the desert. He shouldn't have gone hiking alone, and he should have packed more water. After three days, he ran out. On day six, he managed to use his cell phone and we were able to find him. If we hadn't found him then, he would have died. That was a very happy day for everyone.

✓ **But sometimes I feel annoyed!**

Visitors do crazy things. One group needed help because they'd climbed Uluru in flip-flops! Of course, I helped them, but I felt annoyed. They shouldn't have worn flip-flops. They should have prepared better. Another girl dropped her camera down a canyon. She should have left her camera at the bottom, but she tried to climb down and get it. She fell and broke her leg. We took her to hospital in a helicopter. And no, we didn't 'rescue' the camera.

✓ **Here's a secret...**

I studied law in college. My dad was upset when I decided to become a ranger. Lawyers earn much more money. But if I'd followed his advice, would I have been happy? Every time I see Uluru turning pink in the sunset, or a wallaby hopping past, I smile. Don't tell Dad, but I think I'd do this job for free.

1. Who is Rob?

2. What accident did Rob have?

3. Why did the man light the stove?

4. How many days did the lost walker spend without water?

5. Why did the girl climb down the canyon?

6. What's Rob's secret?

III. Read the texts, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F). Then correct the false sentences.

Woman's work?

In many ways, David McLaren is a stereotypical Scottish man. In his free time, he plays golf, goes to football matches, and meets his friends in the local pub, all the things you'd expect a young, active man to do. And like many men, he isn't very good at housework. He's untidy, hardly ever hoovers and he's never cooked a meal in his life. However, one thing about him does not fit this stereotype: his job. David is a midwife.

Although some women are surprised when they find out that their midwife is a man, David has a good reputation in the part of Scotland where he works. In his opinion, it's because of the way he carries out his duties. I really care about the women that I look after,'

he says. He gets on well with the husbands too. 'Having another man there calms them,' he explains. 'And many of them feel more comfortable asking a man questions.'

'I've been qualified for fourteen years and I've delivered hundreds of babies,' says David, who used to be a coal miner. 'There are only five or six male midwives in Scotland. When I started, I expected more men to join the profession, but the number hasn't really changed. People still see it as a job which only women do.'

A man's world?

Base 34 is a new garage in Lyon, in the south-east of France. Customers who take their cars there for repairs may be surprised to find that all the employees are women.

When Michel Martin advertised for women who wanted to become mechanics, he received 120 applications. After tests and interviews, he chose fifteen. They included a nurse, a secretary, a beauty therapist and two flight attendants. They all wanted a chance to work in this traditionally male environment. I think a lot of people instinctively trust women more. And female customers might feel more comfortable with somebody who doesn't treat them as if they don't understand anything.' Although most car mechanics are still men, the situation is gradually changing. Men are starting to leave the profession, and women are joining it. Why? In a word, technology. In the past, being a mechanic is a physically tough and dirty job. Now, cars are much more complicated than they used to be. You need patience and intelligence to work out what the problem is, not strength. Many people believe that this makes the job more suitable for women than for men.

1. David McLaren does not have the same hobbies as most other men in Scotland.
2. Most women that David has worked with think that he is good at his job.
3. David gets on well with the women but not with their husbands.
4. David is not very experienced in his work.
5. There are not many male midwives in Scotland, but the number is increasing.
6. What is surprised about Base 34 is that no men work there.
7. Fifteen women applied to work at the garage.
8. The women had different jobs before working at the garage, but wanted a change.
9. The job of mechanic is changing because cars are getting simpler.
10. Many people think that there will be more female car mechanics in the future.

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Fun at Work

Are they great ideas or just crazy? Here are some ways that companies keep their employees happy.

1 Sport can be a good way for busy workers to relax. Wright, Newman & Fischer, a group of lawyers based in London, has a small golf course in the office. The first part of the course is on the fifth floor. When your ball drops down the ninth hole, the course continues on the fourth floor. An even more relaxing sport is bowling. Maybe this is why a company called Permatech has a complete bowling alley in the basement. The employees go bowling after work and really enjoy it.

2 What about alternatives to boring suits and company uniforms? One company has 'fancy-dress Fridays'. On the last Friday of every month, each department chooses a theme and the workers dress up accordingly. One department came as famous actors, with the boss dressed as Brad Pitt. Another department chose historical figures; there were three Julius Caesars and two Genghis Khans. And how about this idea from a company called LineHurt, in Paris: they hold moustache-growing competitions for employees and customers. For men only, of course.

3 Some companies like to take their employees out of the office. Finchley Management takes its workers on a trip every year. The workers go to the airport, but they don't know

what country they are flying to. Trips in the past included Rio de Janeiro, Bangkok and the Bahamas. In another company, Wicked Shakes, the staff go on free skiing holidays. And if workers stay with the US-based indulgence Swiss Chocolate Company for five years, they get a free trip to Switzerland to taste the chocolate.

Task 1. Choose the best summary.

1. how one company keeps its workers happy
2. things that companies do to motivate their workers
3. working for the world's best companies

Task 2. Read the text again, and answer the questions.

1. Where exactly is the golf course at Wright, Newman & Fischer?

2. How can the employees at Permatech relax after work?

3. What are 'fancy-dress Fridays'?

4. What surprise do the employees of Finchley Management get every year?

Task 3. Find words in the text that match these meanings.

1. a place where you can go bowling (para. 1) _____
2. a room in a building that is below the level of the ground (para. 1) _____
3. other possibilities (para. 2) _____
4. clothes that everyone in a company or group wears (para. 2) _____
5. important or famous people from the past (para. 2) _____
6. a visit to a place (para. 3) _____

V. Read the texts. For questions 1-10, choose from the paragraphs A-D. the paragraphs may be chosen more than once.

A Jack is an author

'I've always wanted to write. The pleasure I feel from putting myself in someone else's shoes is just immense, and I love creating different worlds away from this dreary two-bedroom house in this busy city. I have been working from home for many years as a freelance writer, and thoroughly enjoy the freedom it gives me. For example, I can choose when to work - personally, my best working times are first thing in the morning and last thing at night. I love the fact that I don't have to commute every day at 7 a.m. either. I must admit though that sometimes I wish I had colleagues to bounce ideas off - asking my wife is fine, but sometimes it would be useful to hear a couple of opinions on a new idea.'

B Suzie is a volunteer at an animal shelter

I am proud to be able to say that I make a difference in my community by making it safer for animals. I spread the word about being a responsible pet owner, and assist with fundraising events. Walking dogs at the shelter also means I am physically quite fit. The job can sometimes be tough, particularly when I have to be the bearer of bad news if, for example, an animal becomes ill. I feel honoured to be able to help the animals here and dream of working full-time in this line of work. There is a new opening for a supervisor at the shelter, and I think I'm going to send in an applicant.'

C Sophie is a school teacher

'I remember being really passionate about my subject at school and my love for the subject is what inspired me to teach it; it just makes me tick. I enjoy being creative and

thinking of new ways to teach the children something. Being a sociable person, I also really enjoy the interaction with children that teaching provides. They can provide such laughs! The main drawback which many teachers find is the work-life balance. Mine isn't too bad, but I do have to work at home quite often - even after the school day has finished.'

D Tom is an office manager

'My main responsibility is ensuring the business is operating smoothly on a day-to-day basis without any problems. Being a manager means that some of the most important skills to possess are leadership skills. You also need great people skills, as listening, talking and understanding is all crucial. Depending on the day, I will either work in the office or have a meeting with clients. I meet many clients each month, and so have to maintain a neat appearance at all times. My work also involves motivating my team, and I have to do my best so that other people in the office can work efficiently. Ultimately this can mean there is a lot of pressure!'

Which person / people

- | | | | |
|-----|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 | prides themselves on helping the community? | ☐ | |
| 2 | does a job which involves working with young people? | ☐ | |
| 3 | discusses how important it is to work well with the staff? | ☐ | |
| 4 | mentions a sad and unpleasant aspect of their job? | ☐ | |
| 5 | mentions what they would like to do in the future? | ☐ | |
| 6/7 | values their communication skills? | ☐ | ☐ |
| 8 | enjoys being free to choose when to work? | ☐ | |
| 9 | is conscious of their job affecting their home life? | ☐ | |
| 10 | occasionally misses not having a workforce? | ☐ | |

VI. Read the job adverts A-E. Match each sentence to one or more of the job adverts.

1. The job involves working six days a week.
2. Applicants need to write a letter.
3. Successful applicants must be reliable.
4. Successful applicants must work in the evening.
5. Successful applicants will have a choice of hours.
6. The job pays £8 an hour or more.
7. Speaking another language will help.
8. There is an application form for this job.

A Are you hard-working and reliable?

If you are, then come and join the team at Left Field Bookshop and Cafe. We need people to work 9-5 Tuesday-Saturday in our busy sandwich bar and in the bookshop too: please state your preference when you apply. Send your CV and a covering letter to the shop manager. Pay: £8 an hour.

B Part-time job at the museum of Liverpool

We are looking for hard-working and enthusiastic people to work a two-hour shift (morning or afternoon) every day between Tuesday and Sunday. Applicants must be good at dealing with the public. Languages an advantage. Apply online or phone for an application form.

Pay: £ 10-£ 12 an hour depending on age and experience.

C ALFREDO'S

Waiters required to work at our busy, city-centre restaurant, lunchtime or evening shifts (11-3 p.m. / 7-11 p.m.), Monday to Friday. £7 an hour. Successful applicants will be flexible, hard-working and polite. Please apply by sending a hand-written letter addressed to the restaurant manager, Ms Tara Cox.

D Wanted

Receptionist for busy sports and fitness club in Liverpool city centre. Must be polite, friendly and reliable. An interest in sport and / or keep-fit is essential and foreign languages would be an advantage.

Hours: 6-10 pm, Monday to Saturday. Pay: £6 an hour

Apply by email to: manager@fitnessforall.com

E EARN MONEY

Did you know you can earn £9 an hour delivering important letters and packages? We need couriers to work seven evenings a week from 8 p.m. - 10 p.m. Applicants should be honest and enthusiastic. They must also have their own car and a full driving licence.

To apply, phone 07753 27166528

VI. Read the text, and match the headings 1-7 with the paragraphs A-F. There is one heading that you do not need.

1. Who is the programme for?
2. How did the programme get its name?
3. How popular is the programme?
4. Who thought of the programme?
5. What is the programme?
6. What are the advantages?
7. How much does it cost?

The Erasmus Programme

A _____

The Erasmus Programme is an exchange programme which gives students the chance to work or study in a different country while they are still at university. It was set up by the European Union. You can stay for anything between three months and an academic year.

B _____

The scheme takes its name from the Dutch philosopher, Erasmus, whose full name was Desiderius Erasmus of Rotterdam. Erasmus was very open-minded. He lived and worked in many countries around the world in order to learn more about different cultures.

C _____

Since it started in 1987, Erasmus has grown dramatically. The first year, 3,244 students took part. Nowadays, around 200,000 students from 31 different countries participate each year.

D _____

Are you studying for a diploma or a degree at a recognised university? Have you already completed the first year of your course? Then you're eligible for a place on Erasmus.

E _____

Erasmus is a time for learning. You will gain an understanding of your host country and be part of an international community of students. Having Erasmus on your CV can offer you many opportunities, as employers see it as a positive educational experience.

F _____

Erasmus is no more expensive than studying in your own country because you do not have to pay extra tuition fees to the university that you visit. For the additional expense of living abroad, you can apply for an Erasmus grant or scholarship.

Pronunciation

• Stress

Put the words below into groups based on the stress.

creative challenging repetitive rewarding indoors
 photographer instructor journalist locksmith developer
 groundskeeper submarine multicoloured semicircle undercooked
 manufacturer unusual quality episode graduation

Stress on the 1 st syllable	Stress on the 2 nd syllable	Stress on the 3 rd syllable
--	--	--

5E. Speaking

• Everyday English

I. Choose the correct response.

1. A: I saw your advert on the school noticeboard.	B: a/ That's great. b/ I see
2. A: I often helped my mum on her stall in the market.	B: a/ Right. b/ That's fantastic.
3. A: I helped sell the vegetables.	B: a/ That's interesting. b/ How incredible!
4. A: I helped her for about five years, but only on Sundays.	B: a/ What a good idea. b/ OK.
5. A: Because I'm hard-working and reliable and I like working with people.	B: a/ Really? b/ That's great, Mai.

• Student holiday jobs

II. Complete the interview with the phrases or sentences below. There is one extra that you do not need.

- A. about a year, part-time
- B. Because I'm hard-working and reliable, and I enjoy dealing with the public.
- C. I saw it advertised on a recruitment agency website.
- D. Occasionally I answered the phone and took reservations.
- E. I used to help out at my uncle's restaurant.
- F. First of all just washing up in the kitchen.
- G. They needed waiters and waitresses for their new cafe.
- H. though it was very tiring on busy nights

Manager How did you find out about the job?

Emily ¹

Manager You've worked in catering before, haven't you?

Emily Yes, I have. ²

Manager What did you do there?

Emily ³ . But then I took orders, and served food and drinks. ⁴

Manager Did you enjoy the work?

Emily Yes, I did, ⁵

Manager And you worked there for about a year, didn't you?

Emily Yes, ⁶

Manager I see. And why do you think you're the right person for this job?

Emily ⁷

I'm also good at working in a team.

Manager Well, thanks for coming, Emily. We'll be in touch before the end of the week.

Emily Thank you, sir.

III. Complete the interview with the phrases or sentences below.

- A. two years, part-time
- B. you do there
- C. hard-working and reliable, and I enjoy dealing with people
- D. your advert in the local newspaper
- E. served customers, cleaned and filled in the shelves... everything
- F. I used to help out at my uncle's shop
- G. you're the right person for this job
- H. How did you find out
- I. have you worked there

J. in a shop before

Manager

1 _____ about the job?

Mai I saw² _____.

Manager I see. Have you worked³ _____?

Mai Yes, I have.⁴ _____.

Manager Right. What did⁵ _____?

Mai I⁶ _____.

Manager How long⁷ _____?

Mai For about⁸ _____.

Manager I see. And why do you think⁹ _____?

Mai Because I'm¹⁰ _____.

I'm also good at working in a team.

Manager Well, thanks for coming in, Mai. We'll be in touch before the end of the week.

IV. Put the words or phrases in the correct order to make questions, and then match the questions in the second part with the answers A-F. Write a number 1-6 in each blank.

1. you / job / out / did / about / How / the / find

2. shop / you / before / in / worked / Have / a

3. did / there / you / What / do

4. long / did / there / How / you / work

5. the right person / the job / do you think / you're / Why / for

6. you / When / could / start

A. Because I'm friendly and reliable and I enjoy working with people.

B. For three years, but only in the evenings.

C. I took the money from the customers when they bought something.

D. I can start immediately, if you need me to.

E. Yes, I've helped my dad out in his clothes shop.

F. I saw your advert in the newspaper.

V. Read the advert and complete an interview dialogue for the job. Include the following information:

- where the applicant saw the advert
- the applicant's experience of similar jobs
- the qualities the applicant has that make him / her right for the job
- when the applicant can start work

Shop assistant required for a new clothes shop opening in the town centre. You will be polite and enthusiastic and good at dealing with customers. Hours 9.00 - 18.00. Saturdays only.

Pay £7 an hour

Interviewer 1 _____

Applicant 2 _____

Interviewer 3 _____

Applicant 4 I worked part-time in a clothes shop near my house last year.

Interviewer _____

Applicant Because I'm polite and enthusiastic and good at dealing with customers. Can I ask you some questions?

Interviewer 5
Applicant 6
Interviewer 7 You work from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m. every Saturday.
Applicant 7
Interviewer You can get £7 an hour.⁸
Applicant I can start immediately, if you need me to.

5F. Writing

• An application letter

I. Read the letter, and do the tasks that follow.

The Manager 13 St Ann's Crescent
 Manning's Electrical Store Bedford MK47 5RF
 Turnpike Lane
 Bedford MK48 5FG
 19 June 2022

Dear Sir or Madam,

Post of part-time shop assistant

1 I am writing to apply for the post of part-time shop assistant which I saw advertised in the Gazette.

2 Last summer, I worked for six weeks as an assistant in my local newsagent's. My responsibilities there included serving customers as well as shelf-filling and answering the phone.

3 I consider myself to be trustworthy, hard-working and enthusiastic. If necessary, I can supply references from the newsagent and also from a teacher at my school.

4 I would be grateful for the opportunity to visit your shop and discuss my application with you in person. I am available for interview any day after school or on Saturdays. If my application is successful, I will be available to start work on 22 July.

I am enclosing my CV.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Dan Wilson

Task 1. Answer the questions.

1. Why is Dan writing the letter?

2. Is the letter formal or informal?

Task 2. In which paragraphs 1-4 does Dan mention:

1. references that he can send? paragraph
2. the job he's applying for? paragraph
3. when he can start work? paragraph
4. where he saw the job advert? paragraph
5. his personal qualities? paragraph
6. his experience of working in a shop? paragraph

II. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences, and then complete the letter with these sentences.

a. CV / enclosing / I / am / my

b. person / discuss / in / We / my / could / application

c. gardener / the post / for / I am writing / of / to apply

d. responsibilities / planting / there / as well as / My / include / garden design

e. gardening / in / have / I / experience / considerable

f. be / work / on 15th May / available / I / to start / will

g. a reference / can / necessary / I / if / supply

Dear Sir or Madam,

¹ _____ for the City Council, which was advertised in last Sunday's newspaper. ² _____. For the last two years I have worked for a private gardening company in Thu Due City. ³ _____.

I consider myself to be a reliable and enthusiastic worker. ⁴ _____ from the manager of the company where I am working at present.

I would be grateful for the opportunity to visit your department where ⁵ _____. I am available for interview any afternoon after 3 p.m.

If my application is successful, ⁶ _____ when I am planning to leave my present company. ⁷ _____

Yours faithfully,

Quan Nguyen

III. Read the paragraphs of an essay, and put them in the correct order.

Do you agree that the most important thing in a job is the salary?

_____A In conclusion, I would say that the money you earn is one important part of a job, but not the only one. In my opinion, the place where you work and the relationship with colleagues are just as important.

_____B It is hard to deny that employees who are highly paid have fewer worries than those who earn less money. It is difficult to enjoy a job when you cannot pay your bills at the end of the month. It is also true that people work better when they feel that their employers are positive about their work. Paying an employee a good salary is one way of showing you value their work. It seems clear then, that the money you earn is an important part of a job.

_____C There are many reasons why a person may or may not like their job. But how much does the money you earn influence this opinion? This is a question we need to answer.

_____D On the other hand, a good salary is not the only important aspect of a job. Where you work can have a big influence on job satisfaction and travelling to work for more than two hours a day can be very boring and tiring. What is more, working with friendly and helpful colleagues can also make work more fun. If the general atmosphere is good, people usually work much better.

IV. Read the letter. In which paragraph 1-4 does Mai mention:

a. references that she can send?

b. the job she is applying for?

- c. when she can start work?
- d. where she saw the job advert?
- e. her personal qualities?
- f. her experience of working in catering?

The Manager 14 Ly Thuong Kiet Street
Italian Restaurant Tan Binh District
93 Dong Khoi Street, District 1 Ho Chi Minh City
Ho Chi Minh City
19 June 2024

Dear Sir or Madam,

1 I am writing to apply for the post of kitchen helper at Italian Restaurant which was advertised in last Saturday's newspaper.

2 I have considerable experience of working in catering. Last summer, I worked for six weeks as a waitress in my local cafe. My responsibilities there included taking orders and serving customers as well as cleaning the kitchen and washing up.

3 I consider myself to be reliable, hard-working and enthusiastic. If necessary, I can supply references from the cafe owner and also from a teacher at my school.

4 I would be very grateful for the opportunity to visit the restaurant and discuss my application with you in person. I am available for interview any day after school or on Saturdays. If my application is successful, I will be able to start work on 25 July, immediately after my exams.

I am enclosing my CV.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Mai Nguyen

V. Read the job advert. Write a formal letter of 120-150 words, applying for the job.

Follow the writing plan. The first and last parts of the letter have been written for you already.



Hotel Receptionist

We need an intelligent, friendly, confident person to work at a hotel in Ho Chi Minh City from 15 July to 31 August. Working hours are from 10 a.m. to 6 p.m. Your duties will include greeting guests, checking them in and out, answering the phone and taking bookings.

Please apply in writing to:
New World Saigon Hotel,
76 Le Lai Street, District 1
Ho Chi Minh City – +84 28 3822 8888

Paragraph 1

- Mention the job you are applying for and where you saw the advert

Paragraph 2

- Talk about why you are right for the job. Mention personal interests, and relevant experience and responsibilities

Paragraph 3

- List your personal qualities and offer to send references

Paragraph 4

- Say you would like to come for an interview and when you are available
- Say when you could start work

The Manager 27 Dao Duy Anh Street
 New World Saigon Hotel Phu Nhuan District
 76 Le Lai Street, District 1 Ho Chi Minh City
 Ho Chi Minh City
 20 June 2024

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing _____

I am enclosing my CV.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

(Your signature)

REVIEW UNIT 5

Vocabulary

I. Match the jobs below with the job descriptions 1-8. There are two words you do not need.

vet plumber surgeon architect lawyer
electrician journalist carpenter dentist estate agent

1. A person who looks after your teeth
2. A person who writes articles for a newspaper
3. A person who designs buildings
4. A person who buys and sells houses
5. A doctor for animals
6. A person who looks after the water system in your house
7. A person who makes furniture out of wood
8. A person who operates on sick people

II. Complete the definitions with the jobs below.

receptionist farm worker estate agent sales assistant
delivery man engineer travel agent computer programmer
dentist waiter

1. My uncle is a(n) _____. He designs and maintains engines in his factory.
2. When you would like to buy or rent a flat or a house, you can come and meet a(n) _____.
3. A(n) _____ is a person who gives goods or items from shops to the houses or offices of customers.
4. A(n) _____ can arrange people's holidays and journeys.
5. A(n) _____ is a person who deals with orders, and helps customers in a retail shop.
6. In a hotel, the _____ can book rooms for people and answer their questions.
7. A(n) _____ works in a restaurant, serving people with food and drink.

8. A(n) _____ is a qualified person to examine and treat people's teeth.
9. People can hire a(n) _____ to sow seeds, put fertilisers or harvest crops.
10. My brother writes applications for computers or smart phones - he's a(n) _____.

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets using the prefixes -er/-or, -ist or -ician.

1. He's a _____. He plays the violin, (violin)
2. He's a _____. He makes political decisions, (politics)
3. She's a _____. She works in a science laboratory, (science)
4. She's a _____. She works in reception at a big hotel, (reception)
5. She's a _____. She cleans offices, (clean)
6. She's a software _____. She writes software for computers, (programme)
7. He's an _____. He acts in plays and films, (act)
8. As a child, my sister was always good at maths. Now she's a _____. (mathematics)

IV. Complete the sentences with the qualities below.

patient creative determined reliable
enthusiastic physically fit flexible polite

1. A person who shows respect for others is _____.
2. A person who is excited and interested is _____.
3. A person who doesn't give up even if something is difficult is _____.
4. A person who can adapt to change is _____.
5. A person who has a lot of imagination and makes new things is _____.
6. A person that you can trust or depend on is _____.
7. A person who is strong and healthy is _____ because that person does exercise regularly.
8. A person who is able to wait calmly for a long time without becoming angry is very _____.

V. Complete the sentences with the words below.

team customers supervise salary menial shift
part-time

1. Her job is badly-paid so she doesn't earn a high _____.
2. My dad does a _____ work so he sleeps at unusual times.
3. Our shop is always busy. We serve a lot of _____.
4. Jack is doing a _____ job to pay for his studies.
5. We enjoy working in a _____ together.
6. A manager must be able to _____ the workers.
7. If you don't have a good education, you will only qualify for _____ work.

VI. Choose the correct answers.

1. For some jobs you need special **paperwork / training**.
2. You will have more free time with a **part-time / full-time** job.
3. I'd prefer to work outside than work in **an office / a company**.
4. A lot of **intellectual / menial** jobs are paid the minimum wage.
5. She earns a good **salary / pay**.

VII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. There is a _____ in the local post office, (**vacant**)
2. Jack has been _____ ever since the factory closed down, (**employ**)
3. My personal _____ will be happy to deal with your questions, (**assist**)
4. She needs to complete the _____ for the job by Wednesday morning, (**apply**)
5. I think it must be very _____ to be an airline pilot, (**stress**)
6. Some teachers love their job and say it is very _____. (**reward**)
7. Tommy is _____ with fire engines and wants to be a firefighter, (**obsess**).

8. Isn't it _____ working in an office all week, David? (bore)

VIII. Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

A Dream Comes True

John Bennett used to run a hotel, which he found quite ¹ _____ (stress), but now he has a very different job. The ² _____ (require) of his new job are quite unusual, but John says he gets a lot out of it and finds it very ³ _____ (reward). Every day John has to climb Helvellyn, a mountain in the Lake District, to check the weather conditions at the summit. The ⁴ _____ (inform) which he gathers is then passed to the Lake District telephone Weatherline service. The Weatherline is used by nearly half a million walkers every year. Although Helvellyn is only 950 metres tall, weather conditions at the summit can change rapidly and make the ascent too ⁵ _____ (challenge) for even the most ⁶ _____ (skill) climbers. When John was a child, he lived in Buckinghamshire, in the south of England, but he often visited the Lake District on family holidays and he ⁷ _____ (gradual) fell in love with it. He studied catering at college and took the first opportunity to move north and find a job in a hotel in the area. When he saw the ⁸ _____ (advertise) for the job with Weatherline, he jumped at the opportunity, and sent in his ⁹ _____ (apply) immediately. He couldn't believe his luck when they told him he'd got the job.

Even though John has no chance of ¹⁰ _____ (promote), he still loves his job. 'It's a dream that comes true!' he says.

Grammar

IX. Complete the short exchanges with the correct form of *will* or *going to* with the verbs in brackets.

1. 'We _____ (pick) you up at 6.30 p.m.' - 'Thank you. That _____ (be) great.'
2. 'Help me! I _____ (fall)!' - 'Don't worry. I _____ (catch) you.'
3. '_____ you _____ (see) Mai after school?' - 'No, not today. She _____ (do) some work on her computer.'
4. 'What _____ you _____ (do) on holiday?' - 'We _____ (decide) when we get there.'
5. 'Be careful. The toast _____ (bum)!' - 'I _____ (switch off) the toaster.'

X. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below (affirmative or negative).

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>pass</i> | <i>get</i> | <i>take</i> | <i>go</i> | <i>arrive</i> | <i>hurry</i> |
|-------------|------------|-------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
1. If you _____ the train, you'll arrive about 6.30 p.m.
 2. Nick will go to university if he _____ his exams.
 3. He'll be late if he _____.
 4. If I _____ out tonight, I'll clean the house.
 5. If they _____ before dinner, we'll go to that new restaurant.
 6. If you learn English, you _____ a better job.

XI. Match the two halves of the first conditional sentences and complete them.

1. You _____ (not pass) your exam
2. We _____ (not have) a barbecue
3. If he _____ (invite) me to the party
4. If they _____ (leave) now
5. I _____ (not be) angry
6. If I _____ (buy) a new smart phone
 - a. I _____ (accept).
 - b. they _____ (get) home before eight o'clock.
 - c. if you _____ (not study).
 - d. I _____ (give) you my old one.

- e. if you _____ (forget) my birthday.
f. if it _____ (rain).

XII. Complete the sentences using *who*, *which*, *whose* or *where*.

- I worked as a model last year, _____ was great fun.
- The accountant, _____ works for my uncle, helped us with all the paperwork.
- 'Acting is great fun,' said Susan, _____ has appeared in many popular films.
- My job, _____ is well paid and rewarding, can also be stressful.
- The people _____ CVs looked promising were invited to an interview next week.
- My mother works for CompuNet, _____ owner is one of the richest people in the country.
- Their mum, _____ is a doctor, works at the children's hospital.
- He doesn't want the job, _____ involves a lot of travelling, because the salary is too low.
- The village _____ his grandparents live is in the Central Highlands.
- He used to live in Ho Chi Minh City, _____ he taught biology at the university.

XIII. Join the sentences using *which*, *where* or *who*.

- I spoke to a doctor. He was very nice.
The doctor _____.
- We visited a museum. It had a wonderful exhibition.
The museum _____.
- She was born on an island. It's now under water.
The island _____.
- His girlfriend is in the fashion industry. She lives in Ho Chi Minh City.
His girlfriend, _____.
- Tom is my best friend. He works with my father.
Tom, _____.
- The sale in Macy's lasted for ten days. It's now finished.
The sale in Macy's, _____.
- I grew up in a house. It's now a theatre.
The house _____.

XIV. Combine the two simple sentences to make one complex sentence. Use commas if necessary.

- My sister works for Vietnam Airlines. She's a flight attendant.

2. My aunt is a famous scientist. Her laboratory is at Viet Nam National University Ho Chi Minh City.

3. The head office of my dad's company is in London. London is in the UK.

4. Our school accountant is retiring. I've known him for two years.

5. A friend helped me to do my assignment. His mother is an IT consultant.

XV. Rewrite the sentences. Use the sentences in brackets to form nondefining relative clauses.

1. James Cameron received an Oscar for Best Director in 1998. (His films include Titanic and Avatar.)

2. My sister works in the local hospital. (She's a nurse.)

3. Stockholm is the capital of Sweden. (It's in Scandinavia.)

4. Our principal is retiring. (I've known him for several years.)

5. Next month we're going to Da Nang. (My uncle lives there.)

6. My family doctor is very friendly to children. (His office is near our house.)

XVI. Complete the text about Bill Hocking with the relative clauses A-F.

A. who worries about him every time he goes out to sea



B. where he keeps his boat

C. who is 81 years old this year

D. which used to last up to 36 hours

E. which he sells at the local market

F. whose boat is called *Neptune's Pride*

Bill Hocking, ¹ _____, is Britain's oldest fisherman. Most mornings, he gets up early and goes down to the harbour, ² _____. His fishing trips, ³ _____, are now only a few hours long. Besides being very old for a fisherman, there are other things that are unusual about Bill. First of all, he can't swim. His wife, ⁴ _____, says 'It's what he loves doing and I would never try to stop him.' Bill, ⁵ _____, goes out in his boat in almost any weather to catch lobsters and crabs, ⁶ _____. The other odd thing about Bill is that he doesn't eat fish. He says he prefers steak.

Word Skills

XVII. Complete the uncompleted words in the sentences by adding the correct prefix below. Make sure that you have to correct spelling.

under-

mini-

mis-

sub-

multi-

- multi- under- ex- co- re-*
1. 'I'm sorry but this steak is _____ cooked - it's still red inside.'
 2. The streets are really icy today because of the _____ zero temperatures.
 3. Don't _____ value this vase. It's over 400 years old and you can definitely sell it for more than £10,000.
 4. This homework is good enough. You needn't _____ do it.
 5. Women are traditionally supposed to be good at _____ tasking - they can do several things at the same time.
 6. Her mum told her not to go out in that _____ skirt because it was much too short.
 7. He sometimes phones his _____ wife to discuss their children's matters.
 8. Both sides agreed to _____ operate to prevent illegal fishing in the area.
 9. It seems a strange question; I wonder if I have _____ heard.
 10. Linda doesn't like wearing plain dresses - she prefers _____ coloured ones.

Use of English

XVIII. Rewrite the sentences with the words in brackets. Decide if you need one or two sentences.

1. The ancient people had no technology for making tools from metal. They had sharp knives and spears made from a type of stone, (nevertheless)

2. The play we watched last night was so bad that I wanted to leave after the first act. I usually enjoy going to small community theatres, (however)

3. Some people really enjoy swimming. Others are afraid of water, (while)

4. I had missed my bus. I got to class on time, (even though)

5. Linda is an honest person. I still wonder whether she's telling the truth about the incident, (although)

6. The room was a real mess after the windstorm. The windows were left open, (therefore)

7. Florida is famous for excellent white beaches. It has warm, sunny weather, (moreover)

8. We went to the beach. The sky was grey and cloudy, (however)

XIX. Complete the text with an appropriate word in each gap.

Jobs for Lazy People

If you look through the job pages of any newspaper, you find the same adjectives appearing in advert after advert: motivated, ambitious, hard-working, energetic, dynamic ... These are the ¹ _____ that you need for all jobs, aren't they? Well, perhaps ² _____ quite all. A few jobs exist which might be ³ _____ for somebody who is less hard-working - even lazy.

Some furniture companies ⁴ _____ people whose job is to test their new sofas and armchairs. ⁵ _____ example, the La-z-Boy Company, which makes reclining chairs, has several full-time furniture testers. All they have to ⁶ _____ is sit in the chairs for long periods of time and then say ⁷ _____ comfortable they are. It's one of the few workplaces where it is OK to fall asleep on the job.

If you're looking ⁸ _____ peace and quiet, as well as a job which involves doing nothing ⁹ _____ long periods, then perhaps you should consider becoming a house sitter. These people are paid just to occupy somebody's home ¹⁰ _____ they are away on holiday or on business. Of course, you have to deal with any problems that arise, but if you are lucky, there won't be any.

Reading

XX. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

College Start-Ups

Most college students see their time at university as the first step in their career path; afterwards, they will go out into the working world and get a job. But some students have great ideas that simply cannot wait until graduation day. With many free resources and technologies available to them, more and more university students are finding ways to start small businesses while they are still in school. Let's take a look at a few enterprising



undergraduates and their companies.

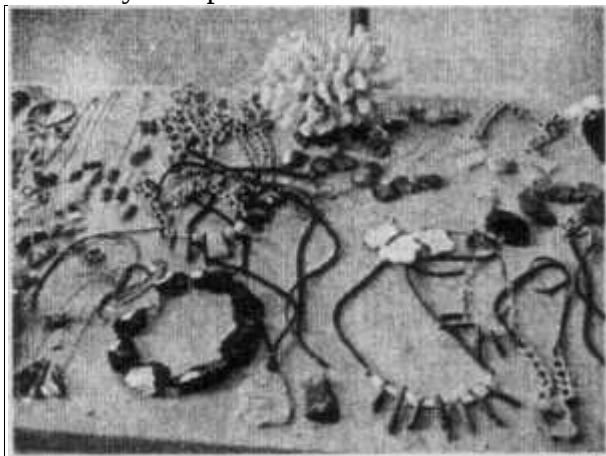
Green Mobile

As a student at the University of Missouri, Brian Laoruangroch used to sell refurbished cell phones on eBay as a hobby. But when Brian realized how much money he could make by buying, fixing, and reselling phones, he decided to create his own website to resell the

phones. His parents loaned him money, and he received money from his local government to found a company called Green Mobile, which now has local retail stores and about 20 employees. Brian said balancing work and studies was challenging, but he didn't forget to pay attention in class. "I was learning important business concepts while I was using them in my own business," he said.

Whitney Williams Collection

Whitney Williams has always been creative, and she enjoys making things in her spare time. While in elementary school, she sold handmade stationery to people in her neighbourhood, and later she expanded her offerings to include one-of-a-kind purses. When Whitney visited Italy as a student at Texas Christian University, she fell in love with the handmade jewelry she saw there. It inspired her to start her own jewelry business. Instead of partying with friends or travelling, Whitney spent most of her weekends for the next two years selling her high-quality jewelry at small shows and private sales. As a result, the Whitney Williams Collection is now produced and sold around the world. Whitney hopes to eventually expand her brand to include shoes, clothing, and accessories.



Punch

As a competitive swimmer, Zac Workman became very familiar with energy drinks. However, Zac found problems with most energy drinks. They either tasted bad, used chemicals that weren't healthy, or made the user feel tired again when its sugar energy was used up. This spurred Zac to do some research when he got to the University of Indiana. Using an old family recipe for fruit punch, Zac developed an energy drink with natural ingredients, and found a partner to produce it. His energy drink, called Punch, became popular on his campus. As his business grows, Zac says he's learning on the job. "People would think it would be difficult to balance class and a business," he said, "but I'm learning more now than I ever have in the classroom."



Task 1. Choose the best answer for each question.

1. Nowadays university students start small businesses while they are still in school thanks to _____.
 A. their free time and hobbies B. their money and free time
 C. their skills and interests D. their business skills and money
2. Brian is the only person who _____.
 A. turned a hobby into a business
 B. spent time on the work to be successful later
 C. thought big and didn't listen to people who told you 'no'
 D. started the company while still in university
3. What best describes the secret behind Brian's success?
 A. find the simplest way to sell his products, even if he had to pay extra for the service
 B. find a partner to make your products and launch the campaign to sell them
 C. ask the local government and family for big loans to start the company
 D. sell products from his own store or website to save money
4. Who did Whitney sell her first products to?
 A. her neighbours B. her classmates C. her teachers D. her parents
5. All of the following are true about Whitney **EXCEPT** that .
 A. she worked at weekends and did not see her friends
 B. she fell in love with someone who has the same interest as her
 C. she made unique purses and high-quality jewelry
 D. she had the intention of producing shoes, clothing, and accessories
6. Which best describes Zac's energy drink Punch?
 A. a drink made especially for swimmers
 B. an all-natural drink that helps athletes
 C. a fresh sports drink that Zac made every day
 D. a sugar-free energy drink for athletes
7. What made Zac successful with his energy drink?
 A. He combined his research and tradition to make a new drink.
 B. He tried to find the best way to produce and put it on the market.
 C. He advertised it on his campus.
 D. He applied the lessons learned in school to his business.
8. Zac is the only person who _____.
 A. says lessons learned in school have helped in managing a business
 B. had difficulty balancing between work and studies
 C. says his business has enriched his knowledge
 D. skipped lessons because they were useless to his business

Task 2. Match each word with its definition. Write the answer in each blank.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------|---|
| 1. resource | _____ | A. able to make money from new, interesting ideas |
| 2. enterprising | _____ | B. products used for writing letters, and notes |
| 3. retail | _____ | C. money, skills, or time that is available when needed |
| 4. concept | _____ | D. to get bigger |
| 5. stationery | _____ | E. the land and buildings of a university or college |
| 6. expand | _____ | F. concerning the sale of things to people in stores |
| 7. spur | _____ | G. motivate, inspire |
| 8. campus | _____ | H. an idea about how something is or should be done |

UNIT 6: Money

6A. Vocabulary

• Numbers and currency

I. Write the prices in numbers.

1. Four pounds seventy-five _____
2. Ten pounds _____
3. Six ninety-nine _____
4. Three pounds ten _____
5. One fifty _____

II. How do we say these prices? Write the words.

1. 55p _____
2. £2.25 _____
3. 99p _____
4. £23 _____
5. £4.49 _____

• Shops and services

III. Look at the Christmas shopping list. Match the presents with seven of the shops below.

*bakery bank butcher's card shop chemist's
clothes shop computer shop electrical store jeweller's music shop
newsagent's post office shoe shop sports shop supermarket*

1. Sarah - earrings
2. Mum - perfume
3. Jack - Black Eyed Peas CD
4. George - tennis balls
5. Laura - T-shirt
6. Hannah - webcam
7. Dad - bottle of wine

IV. Where can you buy these things? Fill the nouns in the correct shop.

*a birthday cake meat a Christmas card a magazine trainers
jeans MP3 player CDs a watch a newspaper
a ring stamps a tennis racquet perfume pasta
a jacket aspirins paper a printer*

post office:

chemist's:

baker's:

butcher's:

newsagent's:

clothes shop:

jeweller's:

stationer's:

computer shop:

sports shop:

V. Read the sentences, and complete the words.

1. The b_____ 's sells delicious bread and cakes.
2. I'm going to the b_____ 's to get some fresh meat for dinner.
3. John sells newspapers and magazines at the n_____ 's.
4. My mum bought the necklace at the j_____ 's. It was really expensive.
5. There isn't any paper in the office. We have to go to the s_____ 's.
6. Can you buy me some aspirin at the c_____ 's, please? I've got a headache.
7. I'm looking for a s_____ s_____ with good badminton equipment.
8. My mum wants some flowers for the balcony, so she's gone to the g_____ c_____ .
9. That new c_____ s_____ in town has all the latest fashions, and it's not expensive.
10. I need batteries for my camera. Where is the nearest e_____ l s_____ ?

• Shopping

VI. Complete the sentences with the words below.

code refund special offers sale coupon
bargain price tag receipt discount

1. You get a _____ if you book more than ten tickets.
2. Goods that you order must have a product _____.
3. Keep your _____ in case you want to bring the article back to the shop.
4. In the market you can sometimes pick up a real _____.
5. This _____ is for 15 cents off paper towels.
6. You can return our goods within 30 days for a full _____.
7. All _____ advertised in this brochure are all right if the articles are still available.
8. Macy's department store is having a _____ this week – they sell their goods at lower prices than usual.
9. In a shop, the _____ on an item for sale is a small piece of card with the price on it.

VII. Choose the correct answers.

1. We paid for the new computer in **cash / currency**.
2. The car was a **discount / bargain**. It was only \$3,000.
3. We can't **pay / afford** a new TV at the moment.
4. A lot of people spend too much and go into **debt / waste**.
5. Have you got any **coins / currency** for a bottle of Coke?

VIII. Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1. My uncle had to _____ some money from the bank to buy the car.
2. The shoes were only £10. They were a real _____.
3. You must never tell anyone the _____ for your debit card.
4. The _____ in the USA is the dollar.
5. I can't _____ to go on holiday this year. Maybe next year.

IX. Complete the signs with the words about money and payment below.

offer stock refunds cheques change
receipt cash sale price credit cards

1. Huge stock clearance! Massive ¹ _____ !
2. We accept all major ² _____.
3. Please check your ³ _____. Mistakes cannot be rectified later.
4. This item is currently out of ⁴ _____.
5. Special ⁵ _____ ! Three for the ⁶ _____ of two!
6. Please retain your ⁷ _____ as proof of purchase.
7. No ⁸ _____ or exchanges.
8. ⁹ _____ only at this cashier. No ¹⁰ _____ or credit cards.

• Verbs to do with money

X. Choose the correct verb in the sentences.

1. I can't **pay for / afford** £20.
2. How much do you want to **cost / spend**?
3. Can you **lend / borrow** me £5 to buy this magazine?
4. We **charge / cost** £6 for replacing watch batteries.
5. Do you **sell / spend** birthday cakes?
6. How much does it **cost / charge**?
7. Buy two for £100 and **sell/save** £20!
8. Can I **lend / borrow** some money from you?
9. Don't forget, you **borrow / owe** me £50.
10. 'Where did you **pay for / buy** that DVD player?' - 'At the electrical store in town.'

XI. Choose the best answers.

- You should _____ using plastic bags when you go shopping.
A. promote B. prevent C. avoid
- Supermarkets have _____ their sales of organic food.
A. increased B. achieved C. organised
- Green organisations are trying to _____ the sale of hybrid cars.
A. avoid B. promote C. persuade
- We can't _____ flights but we can try to reduce the number of them.
A. ban B. decrease C. persuade
- It's going to be difficult for governments to _____ the aims they have set themselves.
A. do B. promote C. achieve

XII. Complete the dialogue using the verbs below.

- spend borrow buy cost afford sell lend*
- Nick** What can I¹ _____ my sister for her birthday?
Mai What about some perfume? There's a chemist's across the road.
Nick I can't² _____ perfume. It's really expensive.
Mai I could³ _____ you some money.
Nick Thanks, but I'd prefer not to⁴ _____ money from you. I'll just make sure I don't⁵ _____ too much on her present.
Mai You could buy her a CD. There's a music shop near the school. New CDs⁶ _____ only VND 100,000 there.
Nick That's brilliant.
Mai They only⁷ _____ heavy metal CDs, though.
Nick Oh. She hates heavy metal.
Mai Why don't you just buy her a sweatshirt?
Nick OK. Let's find a clothes shop.

XIII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

- borrow buy charge cost lend
owe pay for save sell spend*
- Can I _____ this CD with a credit card?
 - Nick gets £20 pocket money every week. He usually _____ about half of it and _____ the rest for the future.
 - Jack borrowed money from the relatives to study abroad, and he _____ his aunt £4,000.
 - 'Do you _____ birthday cakes?' - 'No, we don't. Try the baker's down the road.'
 - 'I've run out of money. Can you _____ me some?' - 'OK, how much do you want to _____?'
 - 'They _____ me £500 for this computer.' - 'That's expensive.'
 - 'I _____ these trainers at the sports shop in town.' - 'Really? How much did they _____?'

XIV. Complete the sentences so that both sentences mean the same. Use the verbs in brackets.

- Can you lend me £10? (borrow)
Can _____?
- I'd like to buy that DVD player, but I haven't got enough money, (afford)
I'd like to buy that DVD player, _____.
- I borrowed £50 from my dad. (lend)
My dad _____
- I paid £15 for my schoolbag. (cost)
My schoolbag _____

5. I used a credit card to buy those DVDs, (pay for)

I _____ with a credit card.

6. How much did that MP3 player cost? (charge)

How much _____ for that MP3 player?

7. My brother lent me £25. (owe)

I _____ £25.

8. You shouldn't spend that money, (save)

You

XV. Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs below.

charge

borrow

cost

lend

owe

pay for

save

sell

spend

Hi Linda,

How was your weekend? On Saturday, I ¹ _____ £100 from my mum to buy some smart clothes for my job interview next week. I already ² _____ her £50 - so that makes £150 now! I ³ _____ £95 on a new jacket and trousers. The jacket ⁴ _____ £80, but the shop only ⁵ _____ me £15 for the trousers because they had a mark on them. (They're normally £30, so I ⁶ _____ £15.) You can't really see the mark.

I met my dad at an Italian restaurant and we shared a pizza for lunch. He was really surprised when I ⁷ _____ it! The restaurant also ⁸ _____ recipe books. I really wanted to buy one for Mum, so Dad ⁹ _____ me £10. I really hope I get the job. I need the money.

Love

Sue

XVI. Read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

MONEY TAKERS - BIG FAILURES

Steven Panjani was robbing a bank, but he needed a bag for the money. He emptied his sports bag and put money in it. Unfortunately, he left several things in the bank, including his wallet, a bank ¹ _____, a ² _____ from the same bank, an electricity ³ _____ and his house keys. He left these on the floor of the bank and was arrested twenty minutes later.

A woman in Sri Lanka went to a company and said she wanted to ⁴ _____ some money in it. Then she gave them a fake \$1 million ⁵ _____. These don't exist! The manager called the police.

A child robbed a sweet shop. He got a bag full of ⁶ _____, but he dropped them. He spent five minutes trying to pick them up and finished at the same time as the police arrived.

A customer at a restaurant gave the waiter his coat, but left his wallet in it. Later the waiter, Emilio Delgado, was found with \$400 in ⁷ _____ from the wallet. When arrested, Delgado said, 'It's a ⁸ _____ from a customer. I ⁹ _____ it this afternoon.'

Willy Finn booked into a US hotel and paid by ¹⁰ _____. That night he robbed the reception. The police looked at his registration, saw his name and address, went to his house and arrested him.

1. A. cash B. statement C. coin

2. A. tip B. cash C. credit card

3. A. bill B. cheque C. tip

4. A. earn B. lend C. invest

5. A. note B. credit card C. ATM

6. A. receipt B. ATMs C. coins

7. A. cash B. statement C. bill

8. A. cheque B. tip C. coin

9. A. lent B. earned C. invested in

10. A. tip B. receipt C. cheque

XVII. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions below. (In two sentences you don't need a preposition.)

for for from from on to

1. I sold my old bike _____ my cousin.
2. I bought this personal stereo _____ the electrical store in town.
3. Burgers cost £2. They charge extra _____ cheese.
4. How much do I owe _____ you?
5. If you need more money, borrow it _____ your parents.
6. Can you lend _____ me some money?
7. Who's going to pay _____ the cinema tickets?
8. He spent £ 1,000 _____ a new TV.

• **Business**

XVIII. Complete the sentences with the words below.

income CEO profits entrepreneur
investors salaries contract funding

1. _____ may be able to find some good opportunities in business this year.
2. Cuts in _____ for the arts have led to the closure of several theatres.
3. He signed a(n) _____ to become vice president of the football club.
4. You can buy insurance to protect you against loss of _____ if you are ill.
5. A few months ago a young property _____ bought a vacant house, redecorated it and sold it for twice the original value.
6. The big oil companies have made enormous _____ following the rise in oil prices.
7. The problems that the _____ of a large corporation face are much more complex than those encountered by small shop owners.
8. Large companies often offer competitive _____ to graduates from well-known universities.

6B. Grammar

• **Second conditional**

I. Complete the second conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If I _____ (know) the answer, I'd tell you.
2. If we _____ (not live) in the city, I'd get really bored.
3. If Peter _____ (not smoke), he'd be much healthier.
4. If I _____ (have) a bicycle, I'd ride to school.
5. If I _____ (owe) money to my friends, I'd pay them back.
6. He'd write more often if he _____ (have) more time.
7. Would you be angry if I _____ (copy) your homework?
8. You wouldn't be so tired in the mornings if you _____ (not stay up) so late.

II. Complete the second conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If they _____ (live) in the city, life _____ (be) easier.
2. I _____ (play) basketball if I _____ (be) taller.
3. If we _____ (have) a DVD player, we _____ (watch) films every evening.
4. If I _____ (find) money in the streets, I _____ (take) it to the police.
5. How _____ (you / feel) if you _____ (not pass) your exams?
6. What _____ (happen) if you _____ (not go) to school tomorrow?
7. He _____ (not be) happy if you _____ (not go) to school tomorrow.
8. You _____ (afford) that laptop if you _____ (not spend) all your money on clothes.

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

take switch have not have to live do
print work shave lie know be

1. If you _____ everything on the Internet, it _____ 57,000 years.
2. You _____ in bed all morning if you _____ go to school.
3. If you _____ a tiger, it _____ still _____ stripes. They are on its skin, not in its fur.
4. You _____ 31,709 years old if you _____ for a trillion seconds.
5. I'm sure your computer _____ perfectly if you _____ it off and on again.
6. If you _____ that today was the last day of your life, what _____ ?

IV. Write second conditional sentences for these situations.

1. I don't have a computer, so I don't play computer games.

2. Ben has to get up early on Mondays, so he doesn't go out on Sunday evenings.

3. I have a lot of homework, so I'll stay in this evening.

4. We don't have to help with the cooking, so we can watch a DVD.

5. There isn't a football match on TV this evening, so they're going out.

6. Jane doesn't have a ticket for the concert, so she isn't going.

V. Complete the second conditional sentences with the verbs below.

discuss have help know phone ring shake
win

1. I'd be very surprised if that film _____ an award.
2. If you were in trouble, I _____ you.
3. If I knew her number, I _____ her.
4. I wouldn't answer the phone if it _____ now.
5. If I met a friend in the street, we _____ hands.
6. I'd tell you the answer if I _____ it.
7. If I were you, I _____ it with your parents.
8. We'd save water if we _____ showers instead of baths.

VI. Continue the story with more second conditional sentences.

1. If you gave me 6 million VND, I'd buy an electric guitar.
2. (practice it every day) *If I bought an electric guitar, I'd practice it every day.*
3. (play really well)
4. (join a band)
5. (give concerts around the world)
6. (become famous)
7. (earn a lot of money)
8. (give you 20 million VND)

VII. Answer the questions with your own ideas.

1. What would you buy if you won 100 million VND in a competition?

2. If you could have a holiday anywhere in the world, where would you go?

3. If you could meet any famous person in the world, who would you choose and why?

4. If you saw an alien, what would you do?

5. Who would you take with you if you had two tickets to a great rock concert?

• **Past perfect**

VIII. Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1. When Dad _____ (do) the gardening, he watched TV.

2. After I _____ (write) the letter, I posted it.

3. Last year, Mai went to San Francisco. She _____ (not visit) the USA before.

4. He couldn't go out because he _____ (promise) to help his mum with the housework.

5. I _____ (buy) the tickets before I heard you were ill.

6. 'Why was he so hungry?' - 'Because _____ (not have) lunch.'

7. I didn't watch the film because I _____ (see) it.

8. She fell ill because she _____ (eat) too much.

9. We couldn't go to that town because our motorbike _____ (break) down.

10. He _____ (not finish) his homework so he couldn't go out.

IX. Complete the sentences. Use the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I didn't go out last night because I _____ (not finish) all my work.

2. Sue couldn't open the door because she _____ (lose) her keys.

3. When we arrived at the bus station, the bus _____ (already / leave).

4. My dad was worried because he _____ (read) about crime in my neighbourhood.

5. David couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower _____ (break) down a few days earlier.

6. _____ (Jane / arrive) when you left the office?

7. One of the staff members at the hotel _____ (take) some money from my room before I checked out.

X. Complete the sentences with the past simple and the past perfect of the verbs in brackets.

1. I _____ (not have) lunch because I _____ (not buy) any food.

2. David _____ (not pass) the exams because he _____ (not study) enough.

3. There _____ (be) water everywhere because the river _____ (flood).

4. After we _____ (play) football, we _____ (have) a shower.

5. I realised I _____ (leave) my books in class when I _____ (sit down) to do my homework.

6. The film _____ (not finish) when our dad _____ (send) us to bed.

7. We _____ (realise) that we _____ (see) the film before.

8. The police _____ (fine) a man because he _____ (go) through a red light.

XI. Complete the second sentences, using the past perfect.

1. He broke his legs. He couldn't go to school.

He couldn't go to school because _____.

2. They didn't go shopping. There was nothing to eat.
There was nothing to eat because .
3. Jane didn't switch on her alarm clock. She was late.
Jane was late because .
4. I didn't charge it up. My phone didn't work.
My phone didn't work because .
5. Tony sold his bicycle. He couldn't cycle to school.
He couldn't cycle to school because .
6. They made a big lunch. There was lots of washing up.
There was lots of washing up because .
7. Vicky didn't study. She failed the exam.
Vicky failed the exam because .
8. John had a nightmare. He was terrified.
John was terrified because .

XII. Complete the short exchanges, using the prompts and the past perfect form of the verbs given in brackets.

1. A: Why was Lan late? (not hear her alarm clock)
B:
2. A: Why was Peter angry? (lose his MP4 player)
B:
3. A: Why was Mai disappointed? (her team lose the final)
B:
4. A: Why was Nick so hungry? (not eat breakfast)
B:
5. A: Why was John upset? (not pass his driving test)
B:
6. A: Why was Daisy embarrassed? (fall off her chair)
B:

XIII. Combine each pair of sentences, using the past simple and the past perfect. Start with *When*.

1. My brother went out. I arrived home.
When I arrived home, my brother had gone out.
2. I went to bed. Nick phoned.
When Nick .
3. The shoplifter ran away. The police arrived.
4. The train left. We got to the station.
5. It started to rain. We left the beach. (We were lucky.)
6. Dad cooked dinner. Mum got home.
7. The film started. We arrived at the cinema.
8. Nick bought some greeting cards. He remembered that he had many at home.

XIV. Look at the list of times and actions. Then write sentences using the past perfect, positive or negative.

ANN - yesterday morning

- 7.15 - got up 8.30 - arrived at the bus stop

- 7.30 - had a shower 8.35 - caught the bus
 8.00 - had breakfast 8.55 - arrived at school
 8.15 - phoned Sarah 9.00 - began classes
 8.20 - left home 11.15- finished homework during break

1. When Ann had breakfast, she *hadn't phoned* (phone) Sarah.
2. When Ann had breakfast, she _____ (have) a shower.
3. At 8.32, Ann _____ (arrive) at the bus stop.
4. At 8.45, Ann _____ (arrive) at school.
5. At 9.10, Ann _____ (begin) classes.
6. When Ann began classes, she _____ (finish) her homework.

XV. Write sentences about yourself at 8.30 yesterday morning. Use the past perfect, positive or negative.

By 8.30 yesterday morning, ...

1. I (wake up) _____.
2. I (get up) _____.
3. I (have breakfast) _____.
4. I (say good bye to my parents) _____.
5. I (watch TV) _____.
6. I (use my mobile) _____.

6C. Word Skills

• Verb + infinitive or -ing form

I. Choose the correct answers.

1. My friends decided **to go / going** to a club after the meal.
2. Kate promised **to help / helping** me with my English homework.
3. David suggested **to go / going** to visit Nick in hospital.
4. My dad refused **to let / letting** my brother ride his motorbike.
5. I think I avoided **to make / making** too many mistakes in the test.
6. I can't stand **to wait / waiting** in queues.
7. Anna can't face **to see / seeing** Helen again after the argument.

II. Choose the correct answers.

1. I fancy **to spend / spending** time on Phu Quoc Island.
2. I love cooking. I look forward to **prepare / preparing** the meal as much as **to eat / eating** it.
3. I think I could manage **to spend / spending** all day **to lie / lying** around in hammocks doing nothing.
4. I can't stand **to wait / waiting** around when you have a device that doesn't work and you have to take it somewhere to get it fixed.
5. I'm not very keen on **to eat / eating** pre-packaged food. I'd rather cook everything from scratch.
6. I tend **to spend / spending** a lot of time **listen / listening** to music or just **to relax / relaxing**.
7. Imagine never **to have / having** a problem with technology or the Internet. That really would be a utopia.
8. I think I'd miss not **to watch / watching** television although I enjoy **read / reading** the books.

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. My brother can't stand _____ (listen) to rap music.
2. Jack doesn't want _____ (go) to the concert tonight.
3. He's so kind. He offered _____ (help) me with my homework.
4. Do you fancy _____ (go out) this evening?

5. When they went to the cinema, he pretended _____ (be) eighteen.
6. He made me _____ (do) it all over again.
7. I couldn't _____ (remember) his address.
8. They won't let us _____ (leave) the Customs until our luggage has been examined.
9. Please let me _____ (know) your decision as soon as possible.
10. You needn't _____ (ask) for permission; you can _____ (use) it whenever you like.

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below.

can't help refuse avoid spend don't mind

1. My sister _____ hours talking on the phone!
2. I _____ waiting if you're not ready yet.
3. Sometimes I _____ laughing at his silly jokes.
4. When I'm on a diet, I _____ eating cakes and biscuits.
5. The teacher _____ to give me more time for the work.

V. Match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. When he was four, he began ... _____ | A. to pay for his lessons. |
| 2. His mother agreed ... _____ | B. practising every day. |
| 3. He imagined ... _____ | C. to study music at university. |
| 4. He hoped ... _____ | D. to learn the piano. |
| 5. He didn't mind ... _____ | E. becoming a famous pianist. |

VI. Complete the sentences. Use the -ing form of the verbs below.

*think watch go live play help copy have
get up*

1. Can you imagine _____ in a foreign country?
2. Phong suggested _____ a new DVD.
3. I can't stand _____ early in the morning.
4. It's really annoying - he keeps _____ my homework.
5. Do you fancy _____ to the cinema this evening?
6. I don't mind _____ my parents with the housework.
7. I spend a lot of time _____ computer games.
8. The food in the school canteen is terrible, so I avoid _____ lunch there.
9. I can't help _____ that he isn't telling the truth.

VII. Complete the sentences. Use the infinitive form of the verbs below.

study pay carry let buy be

1. Nick offered _____ my suitcase as it was very heavy.
2. Lan is pretending _____ - but she's really listening to music on her smartphone.
3. Jack broke the window, but he refused _____ for a new one.
4. Kate wants _____ a nurse when she leaves school.
5. Susan's parents agreed _____ her go to a rock concert.
6. Phong decided not _____ a new DVD player. It's too expensive.

VIII. Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the verbs.

1. I didn't want to go to the party on my own, so my sister agreed _____ with me. (come)
2. 'Why do you keep _____ that song? It's annoying.' (sing)
3. I hope _____ you next weekend, (see)
4. He refused _____ his mum where he was going, (tell)
5. I don't fancy _____ tonight. Let's go out. (stay in)
6. We spent an hour _____ on the phone, (chat)
7. He pretended not _____ me. (hear)
8. I can't imagine _____ old. (be)

9. She can't help _____ nervous about the exams, (feel)

10. What time do you expect _____ in Ha Noi? (arrive)

IX. Complete the text with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.

Linda Marvin lives in Hollywood. She hopes ¹ _____ (be) a famous actress one day, but at the moment she spends most of her time ² _____ (work) in a cafe. Last month, she agreed ³ _____ (appear) in a pop video, but she usually avoids ⁴ _____ (do) that kind of work because she wants ⁵ _____ (be) a serious actress. She doesn't mind ⁶ _____ (work) in a cafe, but she often imagines ⁷ _____ (become) a star.

6D. Reading

I. Complete the text with the phrases below. There is one extra that you do not need.

- A. before doing business
- B. get what we ask for
- C. a well selected password
- D. make sure there is contact information
- E. know what to expect
- F. a store online in minutes
- G. there have been any complaints
- H. check that it starts with 'https'
- I. print out other information you may need

Tips to Protect Yourself While Shopping Online

Tip 1

Make sure you are using a secure server and browser with industry security standards before you enter credit card information online. First, look at the address in the address bar and ¹ _____. Then look at the bottom of the Internet window and make sure there is a closed padlock.

Tip 2

Use companies you know. Anyone can open ² _____ and be gone tomorrow. Here are some things to research ³ _____ with an unknown company. ⁴ _____ for the company and compare this with information from the domain register.

Check for a return policy.

Check to see if ⁵ _____.

Are they a member of Better Business Bureau Online (BBBO)?

Tip 3

When shopping we all hope that we ⁶ _____ but sometimes there are problems that arise with what we ordered. Check the company's return policy online before you order, so you will ⁷ _____.

Tip 4

Keep information about your order. Also ⁸ _____ such as return policies, company information, specific product information and warranty information. Trust your instincts - if it sounds too good to be true, it probably is!

II. Complete the text with the phrases below. There is one extra that you do not need.

- A. I'll meet you in town
- B. Watch out for Internet crime!
- C. It's all there on the web
- D. Saving time and money
- E. Is this what I ordered?
- F. More and more customers

One-click Shopping

1 _____

What can you buy online? These days you can buy food, cars, holidays and even a house with a few clicks and a credit card. In fact, it might be quicker to list the things that you can't buy on the Internet.

2 _____

According to the statistics, 85% of Internet users have bought something online. In 2006, only 10% of the world's population shopped on the Internet. Two years later the figure was 40% - that's nearly 900 million shoppers.

3 _____

It's easy to see why people are choosing their computer instead of the high street. With city centres getting more and more crowded, and things like petrol and parking getting so expensive, it makes sense to avoid the crowds and shop from home. There are often great deals on the internet, too.

4 _____

Of course, there are disadvantages to shopping for things online. You can't try clothes on before you buy, so they can sometimes be the wrong size, or disappointing when they arrive. And of course, Internet shoppers have to be patient and wait for the goods to arrive.

5 _____

So will Internet shopping replace shopping in town completely? It's hard to say, but most people think it won't, even with more and more Internet offers and possibilities. In the UK shopping with friends or family has become one of the most popular leisure activities. Many people simply enjoy going shopping.

III. Read the text, and choose the correct answers.

An Unusual Present

Are you looking for a present that is different? Perhaps you don't want to give your best friend or your mum or dad the same presents as everyone else does. What can you buy that they will always remember? Why not get them an 'experience' gift?

The presents that people give have changed a lot in recent years and there has been a big rise in the number of people giving 'experience gifts' to celebrate those special occasions. This can be a flying lesson in a helicopter, a day on a race track, an afternoon in a hot air balloon or one of many other experiences that companies are advertising.

These experiences are usually very exciting. An 80-year-old man celebrated his birthday by flying a Tiger Moth, an aeroplane from the 1930s. When he landed he said, 'That was a fantastic experience! I've always wanted to go in a Tiger Moth. I never thought I could learn how to fly one. For my 90th birthday I want to drive a Ferrari round a race track!'

Luckily, the cost of an 'experience gift' always includes insurance.

1. People today look for presents _____.
 A. the person will like B. the person needs
 C. the person will remember D. they would like themselves
2. An 'experience gift' _____.
 A. is a special party
 B. is very expensive
 C. is a book about the person's life
 D. is usually something the person hasn't done before
3. You can _____.
 A. buy an 'experience gift' from a shop
 B. buy an 'experience gift' from a company
 C. arrange an 'experience gift' yourself
 D. buy some very cheap 'experience gifts'
4. The 80-year-old man _____.
 A. enjoyed the experience

- B. was scared
 - C. went in a Tiger Moth when he was younger
 - D. was a passenger in the plane
5. That old man _____.
- A. wants to buy a Ferrari B. wants to watch car racing
 - C. thinks he'll live another ten years D. doesn't like fast cars

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

At the age of 19, an American student called Ron Steen decided to put a very unusual item up for sale on eBay: his own future. Or to be precise, 2% of his future earnings. He needed the money to pay for his university studies. This was how he described the offer: 'After I complete my education, I plan on making at least 30 million dollars in my lifetime. When I meet my goal, you will make six times your original investment.'

Ron claimed the sale a fantastic bargain because he was a very talented and intelligent person; he was certain to become a millionaire. But some people had doubts about the truth of his description. For example, he said his score in a national maths exam was 900. In fact, the exam was out of 800 - so perhaps his maths was not so good. And in the end, eBay decided that this auction was against the rules and stopped it. Ron's father lent him the money for university. However, the story about Ron Steen's auction appeared in the news on TV and the Internet all around the world. So perhaps he has a successful future in advertising.

Task 1. Choose the best title for the text.

- A. The First eBay Auction
- B. An Internet Addiction
- C. A Piece of My Future
- D. A Maths Genius

Task 2. Choose the best answers

1. What did Ron Steen try to sell on eBay?
 - A. 2% of everything he owned
 - B. 2% of the money he planned to earn in the future
 - C. his university qualification
 - D. the chance to study at university
2. According to Ron Steen, why was it a bargain for the buyer?
 - A. His future earnings were certain to be millions.
 - B. He was happy to accept a low bid.
 - C. The buyer only needed to pay 800-900 dollars.
 - D. The buyer was certain to be on TV.
3. Why did some people question Ron's claims about his own abilities?
 - A. They knew he was not an honest person.
 - B. People always lie about their abilities.
 - C. He made spelling mistakes in his description.
 - D. He claimed to have a score in a maths exam that was not possible.
4. The auction did not take place because _____.
 - A. Ron decided he didn't want to sell his own future
 - B. the auction site decided not to allow it
 - C. the bids were not high enough
 - D. his father decided to lend him the money
5. The story shows that Ron Steen _____.
 - A. is good at create free advertising
 - B. is certain to do very well at university
 - C. is certain to appear in news reports for many years
 - D. has a future working for an Internet company

V. Read the text, and match the sentences A-F with the gaps 1-5 in the text. There is one sentence that you do not need.

- A. Obviously, her private life is very important to her.
- B. In total she has won over \$21 million.
- C. That time, the card won \$10 million.
- D. Apparently, she also bought a van for the church.
- E. So she is perhaps as lucky with cards as with the lottery.
- F. There are often long queues outside the shop and along the road nearby.

When it comes to money, the world's luckiest woman appears to be a 63-year-old American called Joan Ginther. She has managed to win the jackpot four times. ¹ _____ Experts say that the chances of winning this much are extremely small.

Mrs Ginther's first win was in 1993 when she won half of the \$11 million first prize of the Texas Lottery. The rest of her money has come scratch cards. You scratch these cards to reveal if you have a winning code. They are very popular, but not many people who buy them win anything. However, Mrs Ginther won \$2 million from a *Holiday Millionaire* scratch card in 2006 and then she won another \$3 million from a *Millions and Millions* scratch card in 2008. ² _____ She bought the card from the Times market in Bishop, Texas, the local



farming community where she used to live.

As a result of these wins, the Times Market in Bishop where Mrs Ginther bought her card has become very popular. ³ _____ The shop also receives calls from people trying to purchase scratch cards over the phone, even though this is illegal. However, not much is known about Mrs Ginther. ⁴ _____ Even her neighbours have very little to say about her. Her answering machine says 'Please do not leave a message'. She is now rarely seen in Bishop because she moved away and she now lives in Las Vegas.

Sun Bae, the owner of Times Market, remembers that Mrs Ginther bought a new car for one of the town residents, even though she herself drives around in an old car. ⁵ _____ And when she bought her new home in Las Vegas, she donated her old home in Bishop to charity. 'She's helped so many people,' Mrs Bae said.

VI. Read the text, and match the opinions below with the people. Write the names.
There is one opinion that you do not need.

Has Christmas Become Too Commercial?

❖ **Tell us what you think!**

Jane, Glasgow, Scotland

For most people in Britain nowadays, gift-giving, parties and entertainment are more important at Christmas than religion. You can see adverts for Christmas presents on TV and in shops in October, and people feel under pressure to spend lots of money. Some shops are even open on Christmas Day and most people don't go to church. Christmas has lost its true meaning.

Mia, Oxford, England

You never hear a child complain that Christmas starts too early! Yes, it may be very commercial, but you can give Christmas whatever meaning you like. I think it's up to each

individual or family to decide when to begin the celebrations and how much money to spend on presents, cards, food, etc.

Liz, Cardiff, Wales

It is true that for many Britons, Christmas doesn't have the same religious meaning as it did in the past. But does that really matter? Families still get together and everyone still has a great time, especially the children.

Tom, Belfast, Northern Ireland

My dad owns a small gift and toy shop. He makes more money in November and December than in all the other months of the year together. Christmas needs to start as early as possible for him. He needs time to attract customers and get them to spend money. It's also good for the customers because they can spend the cost of Christmas over two or three months.

Nathan, Plymouth, England

Christmas starts much too soon in the UK. Shops should wait until after Halloween and Bonfire Night before they put up decorations and start selling Christmas puddings. I'm bored with Christmas by 25th December! And then as soon as Christmas is over, shops start selling Easter gifts - even before the New Year.

1. Christmas starts far too early.
2. Christmas isn't important to people nowadays.
3. It's good that Christmas is commercial.
4. Christmas is all about money.
5. It's different now, but still good fun.
6. People can choose how to celebrate it.

VII. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

The World's Luckiest Man

Eighty-one-year-old Frano Selak is known as the world's luckiest man. Throughout his long life, he has survived seven disasters, all of which could have killed him. Then, at the age of 76, he got married for the fifth time. ¹ _____

Selak was born in a small town in Croatia. He was involved in his first accident in 1962. He was travelling by train from Sarajevo to Dubrovnik, when the train jumped from the rails and fell into a freezing river. ² _____ He managed to get to the riverbank with a broken arm, suffering from hypothermia. The following year Selak took a flight for the first and last time. The door opened and the passengers were thrown out of the plane. ³ _____ If that haystack hadn't been in the field, he would have



died. _____

A few years later, he was travelling by bus this time, when, again, it fell into a river. ⁴ _____ This time he only had cuts and bruises. He was getting used to it. His next accident happened in 1970, but with a different method of transport. He was driving along the motorway, when suddenly his car caught fire. ⁵ _____ Three years later, his next car caught fire at a garage. The fire swept through the car. Again, he escaped from the vehicle, but he lost most of his hair.

Accident number six was caused by transport again, but this time Selak was on foot. He was walking in Zagreb, when a bus hit him. Amazingly, he wasn't too badly hurt. Was there no safe way for him to travel? His seventh accident happened the following year. He was driving in the mountains. He came round a bend and saw a huge lorry coming towards him.⁶ _____ Miraculously, he managed to jump out of the car. He watched as the car rolled three times down the mountain and exploded.

Selak said, 'I never thought I was lucky to survive all my disasters. I thought I was unlucky to be in them in the first place.' In the end, however, Selak did feel lucky - not when he won the lottery, but when he met his fifth wife, Katerina. In fact, he has sold his luxury home and given away most of his lottery money. He said, 'All I need at my age is my Katerina. Money wouldn't change anything.' But there was one thing that he did spend some of his money on.⁷ _____

Now, even if he never travels by car, bus or plane again, he can still keep walking.

Task 1. Why does Frano Selak think he is the world's luckiest man? Choose the correct answer.

- a. Because he is now very rich, having narrowly escaped death on a number of occasions.
- b. Because he has survived seven serious accidents and then won the lottery.
- c. Because he has finally found happiness with his fifth wife.

Task 2. Match the sentences A-H with the gaps 1-7. There is one sentence that you do not need.

- A. Four people drowned, but, again, Selak swam to safety.
- B. Nineteen people were killed, but Selak fell clear of the crash and landed in a haystack.
- C. He turned sharply to avoid the collision, and went straight off the road.
- D. He never travelled by public transport again.
- E. He celebrated by buying his very first lottery ticket - and he won the jackpot!
- F. He had his hip replaced in hospital.
- G. Seventeen people drowned in the icy waters, but Selak survived.
- H. He managed to escape from it just before it exploded.

Task 3. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- 1. Selak got married the fifth time after winning the lottery.
- 2. The third accident happened when Selak was travelling by bus.
- 3. Two of the accidents happened in the 1960s.
- 4. Selak was badly injured in the bus accident.
- 5. At the time of all seven accidents, Selak was travelling in a vehicle.
- 6. On three occasions Selak escaped from a burning car.
- 7. Selak feels that before he met his fifth wife he had more bad luck than good luck.

8. Selak believed that money doesn't make him happier.

VIII. Read the text, and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

Are you looking for a more interesting alternative to your weekly shop? Why not try one of the many farmers' markets which have sprung up all over the country? With a fine selection of the very freshest fruit and vegetables, as well as bread, cheese, meat, and honey, these farmers' markets offer the shopper both variety and superior quality, as well as a pleasant change from a boring trip to the supermarket.

Farmers' markets have been popular in smaller towns for many years, and they also have a long tradition in parts of London. Even though the majority of people prefer shopping in large supermarkets, particular on weekdays, shopping at local farmers' markets is becoming a more and more popular weekend activity. These markets offer a chance for farmers to sell fresh produce directly to the public. This direct contact with the producers gives customers the opportunity to ask questions about the produce they are buying. This is

exactly what appeals to the city shoppers who frequent these markets - they want to know where their food comes from and how it is made. They are looking for fresh, high-quality produce from local suppliers, and an authentic taste of the country. However, it isn't only city folk who are benefiting from this boom in farmers' markets, as tourists are also keen to sample genuine UK produce such as organic sausages and home-made bread.

Edinburgh Farmers' market is one of the most prestigious markets in the UK and has won many awards for its high-quality produce. It takes place every Saturday from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m., just below the impressive Edinburgh Castle, which provides a rather dramatic setting. Visitors to the markets can find a wide variety of local products, including fresh seafood. There are even cookery demonstrations where you can learn how to really make the most of the delicious home-grown produce. Whether you are simply doing your weekly shopping, or looking for something special to buy, a visit to one of these farmers' markets is always an interesting experience.

1. Most customers still like to do their shopping at supermarkets.
2. Farmers' markets are popular because the producer sells straight to the customer.
3. Farmers' markets give producers and customers a chance to discuss the products.
4. Most shoppers at the markets don't care about the origin of the produce.
5. People from overseas also shop at the markets.
6. Edinburgh has a monthly farmers' market.

6E. Speaking

• Photo comparison and presentation

I. Look at the photos. Student A describes the first picture while student B describes the second one, and then present the reasons why schools should invest more money on them, using the useful language and the prompts below.

The first photo shows

The second photo shows ...

Both photos show ...

The facilities in help students ...

They both help ...

Our school should...

- the first photo / a school canteen
- students / having lunch / their teacher
- second photo / school gym
- both photos / the school facilities
- first photo / the students / not having lessons / while / second photo / the facilities / PE lessons
- facilities / the canteen / students / enjoy / their lunch / the atmosphere
- facilities / the gym / students / get better results / PE lessons
- canteen / gym both / help improve / health / students
- our school / spend more money / upgrade both of them

A The first photo shows

B The second photo is

A

B

II. Use the useful language in Exercise ... and the prompts below to practise comparing the two photos.



first photo / a school smart library

students / working / or reading books and references / computers

second photo / a school IT room / a lot of computers both photos / the school facilities

first photo / students / working outside their classrooms / while / second photo / the facilities /

IT lessons facilities / the school smart library / create / best learning environment / students

facilities / the IT room / help students / get better results / IT lessons

smart library / the IT room / both help students / have access / human knowledge /

information / the Internet more easily

our school / spend more money / both of them / because / it a good investment / the young generation

A The first photo shows

B The second photo is

A

B

• Shopping

III. Put the letters in the correct order to complete the dialogues.

1. **a** Is it OK?

b No, it doesn't _____ very well, (t i f)

2. **a** That shirt is cheap.

b Yes, it's in the _____. (l e s a)

3. **a** I'd like to buy this shirt.

b Sure. Come over to the _____. (l i t l)

4. **a** I'll take this shirt, please.

b That's £9, please. Thanks. And £1 _____. (a n c h g e)

5. **a** How much is this T-shirt?

b The _____ is on the label. (r i p e c)

6. **a** I'd like to change this skirt. I bought it last weekend.

b Of course. Have you got the _____? (e c e r t p i)

IV. Complete the questions with the words below.

about

help

much

size

try

1. Can I _____ you?

2. What _____ are you?
3. Can I _____ them on?
4. How _____ these ones?
5. How _____ are they?

V. Use the questions in Exercise IV to complete the dialogue.

Shop assistant ¹ _____
Nick Yes, I'm looking for some blue jeans.
Shop assistant ² _____
Nick Small.
Shop assistant ³ _____
Nick Yes, they look nice. ⁴ _____
Shop assistant £30
Nick ⁵ _____
Shop assistant Sure. The changing rooms are over there.

VI. Complete the dialogue with the words below.

advice *afford* *borrow* *course*
problem *should* *understand* *were*

Boy Can I ask your ¹ _____ about something?
Girl Yes, of ² _____. What's the ³ _____ ?
Boy It's my friend's birthday tomorrow, but I can't ⁴ _____ to buy him a present.
Girl If I ⁵ _____ you, I'd just get him a nice card.
Boy Really? I could ⁶ _____ some money from my parents.
Girl I don't think you ⁷ _____ do that. If you explain to your friend that you haven't got any money, he'll ⁸ _____ .

6F. Writing

• An opinion essay

Read the paragraphs of an opinion essay. Put the paragraphs in the correct order and complete the gaps with the phrases below.

However *In summary* *I firmly believe*
On the other hand *For example* *What is more*

- A** ¹ _____, money is obviously necessary in today's world. It is very difficult to be happy if you do not have enough money for things like holidays. ² _____, to my mind it is still possible to be happy and relatively poor, as long as you have enough to buy food and clothing.
- B** ³ _____, I would say that money can improve the lives of people who do not have enough to live comfortably. However, money alone is not enough to bring happiness; love and friendship are far more important.
- C** ⁴ _____ that money is not the most important thing in most people's lives. They regard friends and family as more important. ⁵ _____, if you are feeling miserable about a friendship that had ended, money cannot help you.
- D** In most parts of the developed world, people are richer today than they were fifty years ago. But has money made them happier? This is the question we need to answer.
- E** ⁶ _____, it seems to me that rich people are often the unhappiest. If money really could buy happiness, the rich would be the happiest people in the world. Judging by the stories about them in magazines and on TV, they clearly are not.

Vocabulary

I. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases below.

takeaway optician's baker's stationer's DIY
shop
charity shop estate agent's chemist's cosmetics shop
florist's

1. This shop sells clothes and other things to raise money for a good cause.
2. This shop only sells beauty products.
3. If you want to decorate your home, you need to buy things from this shop.
4. If you want to buy or sell a house, you can go to this place.
5. This shop only sells fresh flowers.
6. This is a shop where you can get fresh bread and cakes.
7. They will cook food for you at this place, but you eat the food somewhere else.
8. This shop sells medicines and beauty products.
9. If you have problems with your eyes and need to buy glasses, you go to this place.

10. This shop sells paper, pencils and pens.

II. Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1. We bought this ring at the _____ in the High Street.
2. Jack has a job. He sells newspapers at the _____.
3. Can you buy me some perfume at the _____, please?
4. I'm just going to the _____ to get some fresh beef for dinner.
5. Ken bought some new books at the _____ last week.

III. Complete the sentences with the below.

advertising banknotes bargain offers goods sale
purchased

1. Customer How much is this T-shirt?
Assistant £10.99. It's half price today, so it's a real _____!
2. Jack I'm selling my camera on eBay. I hope I get a lot of money for it.
Joe I hope so too. Have there been any _____ yet?
3. Ben I don't like this website. There are so many pop-ups and flashing messages.
David Well, the website can make a lot of money from _____ like that.
4. Customer How much is the painting in the window, please?
Assistant I'm afraid it's not for _____.
5. Tele sales What's the problem?
Customer I _____ some things online last week, but they haven't arrived.

IV. Choose the correct answers.

1. We will gladly collect the item back for free and give you a _____.
A. receipt B. refund C. sale
2. Fresh salmon is a _____ at the supermarket this week.
A. refund B. coupon C. bargain
3. Bring the _____ below to any of our stores and pay just £10.99 for a nice shirt.
A. coupon B. price tag C. discount
4. The hotel offers _____ in the winter, so it is cheaper to stay in winter than in summer.
A. discounts B. refunds C. receipts
5. This month's _____ include a shirt, trousers and bed covers, and you're also given a choice of three stores for shopping.
A. price tags B. special offers C. refunds
6. The _____ on the T-shirt said \$50, but the price on the system was \$47.
A. coupon B. sale C. price tag

7. Goods should be supplied within 28 days after the _____ of your order.

A. discount code B. receipt C. bargain

8. Only one voucher or _____ can be used per purchase.

A. sale B. receipt C. discount code

V. Choose the correct alternatives.

1. Jane **wastes** / **pays** her pocket money on DVDs she never watches.

2. The jacket I bought is too small, so I'm going to **take** / **bring** it back to the shop.

3. We can't **afford** / **pay** a new car, so we're getting a second-hand one.

4. Daisy **spends** / **buys** a lot of money on clothes.

5. Nick **owes** / **affords** me 100,000 VND for his concert ticket.

6. I **lent** / **borrowed** Phong some money last week, but he still hasn't given it back.

7. The new supermarket **costs** / **charges** 2,000 VND for each plastic bag.

8. Joe needs some money, so he's going to **buy** / **sell** his motorbike.

VI. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the verbs below.

save borrow charge cost lend
owe pay for sell spend

1. They _____ sweets and chocolates at the newsagents.

2. The console was expensive. It _____ nearly £300. But they didn't _____ me for the games.

3. Please _____ those DVDs at the till.

4. 'I've _____ all my money at the cinema. I need to _____ some for the bus.' - 'OK. I'll _____ you £1.'

5. I need to work at the cafe this weekend. I _____ my parents £100.

6. My sister's really careful with money. She _____ most of her pocket money every week - she never buys anything.

VII. Complete the definitions with the words below. Then complete the sentences with the appropriate form of these words.

allowance afford budget debt
expenses income save waste

a. _____ : money spent on something

b. _____ : keep money for later

c. _____ : have enough money for

d. _____ : use unwisely (e.g. money)

e. _____ : money received

f. _____ : plan how to spend your money

g. _____ : money that you owe

h. _____ : money given to a child by parents

1. If you're living on a low _____, it's essential to _____ carefully.

2. My twelve-year-old sister never spends all of her _____ : she _____ at least half of it every month.

3. She got into _____ when she was a student and she still owes thousands of pounds.

4. My grandparents' house is in a terrible state, but they can't _____ to renovate it.

5. My uncle used to be well-off, but he _____ a lot of money on a business that failed.

6. The company has moved to smaller offices in an effort to reduce its _____

VIII. Match the two halves of the sentences.

1. How much do you spend

2. John refused to pay

3. I borrowed 1 million VND

4. The taxi driver charged us an extra 50,000 VND

5. We bought our car

6. Laura is saving up
7. David pays £10
8. Carol will sell her leather jacket
 - A. from our neighbour.
 - B. for her gap year trip.
 - C. for his meal because it was so disgusting.
 - D. to the person who offers her the most money.
 - E. from my brother. He's very kind.
 - F. into his savings account every month.
 - G. on computer games?
 - H. for each suitcase we had.

Grammar

IX. Complete the second conditional sentences.

1. I _____ (do) that if I _____ (be) you.
2. If I _____ (have) the money, I _____ (buy) a new phone.
3. She _____ (have) friends if she _____ (not be) so rude.
4. You _____ (be) healthier if you _____ (do) more exercise.
5. If they _____ (speak) English, they _____ (be) able to ask for directions.
6. If you _____ (not be) so slow, I _____ (not get) so impatient.

X. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below (affirmative or negative).

take be smoke help understand work communicate
build

1. If we _____ so much and relaxed more, we'd be a lot happier.
2. If motorists had to pay another road tax, they _____ furious.
3. If I _____ the 4.30 a.m. train, I'd be in Nha Trang by lunchtime.
4. If we all spoke two or three languages, we _____ better with people from other countries.
5. If we _____ smaller houses, we would use less energy.
6. If he _____, he wouldn't cough so much.
7. If we recycled our rubbish, it _____ the environment.
8. If we learned about other cultures, we _____ people from other countries better.

XI. Complete the sentences. Use the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1. When the firemen arrived, the fire _____ (already / burn) down the warehouse.
2. I knew about the robbery because I _____ (hear) about it on TV.
3. Mary couldn't cycle home because someone _____ (steal) her bike.
4. My parents _____ (not watch) the film before, so they bought the DVD.
5. _____ (Peter / phone) before you left the house?
6. Sue wanted to meet my brother because she _____ (never / see) him before.

XII. Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs below.

not close finish see go leave not revise

1. I did badly in the exam because I _____.
2. By the time I arrived at the cinema, the film _____.
3. When I looked in my bag, I realised that I _____ my phone on the bus.
4. I phoned my friend at home, but she _____ out.
5. She told the police that she _____ the crime.
6. The burglars got in through the window because we _____ it.

Word Skills

XIII. Complete the sentences with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.

1. My brother is pretending _____ (be) an astronaut.

2. I spend a lot of time _____ (play) computer games.
3. Susan can't help _____ (be) impatient.
4. I don't fancy _____ (walk) home.
5. My dad suggested _____ (have) dinner in a restaurant.
6. We decided _____ (spend) the weekend in the countryside.

XIV. Complete the sentences with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I promise _____ (tell) you the truth.
2. Do you fancy _____ (play) football tomorrow?
3. We decided _____ (have) lunch in a cafe.
4. I don't feel like _____ (go) home.
5. Do you want _____ (watch) television?
6. He didn't expect _____ (pass) the exam.
7. Have you finished _____ (eat)?
8. He's pretending _____ (be) angry.
9. I can't help _____ (feel) nervous.
10. She doesn't enjoy _____ (wear) formal clothes.

XV. Complete the sentences with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs below.

pass chat feel be help pay study

wait

1. I'm very ambitious. I often imagine _____ rich and famous.
2. My dad is really kind. He always offers _____ people.
3. I'm quite optimistic. I usually expect _____ my exams.
4. My friend Lan is really impatient. She can't stand _____.
5. Nick is really generous. He always offers _____.
6. Jane is very hard-working. She doesn't mind _____ for hours.
7. Jack is so talkative. He keeps _____ even when no one is listening!
8. My sister is so shy. She can't help _____ nervous when a boy talks to her.

XVI. Complete the text, using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

My dad always gets up at 5 o'clock every morning and he spends an hour ¹ _____ (run). He says it's a good time because you avoid ² _____ (find) the streets full of people. He's been running for a year since he decided ³ _____ (get) fit. He says he wants ⁴ _____ (take) part in a marathon. When he arrives home, he's very hungry but he refuses ⁵ _____ (eat) a big breakfast because he agreed ⁶ _____ (go) on a diet with my mum. Thanks to the running and the diet, he's really fit. Last year I couldn't imagine ⁷ _____ (see) my dad in a marathon but if he keeps ⁸ _____ (train) hard, I'm sure he'll do it.

Use of English

XVII. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1. My mum thinks I waste my pocket money _____ things I don't really need.
2. I've been saving _____ for some books.
3. I don't like being _____ debt.
4. She could pay _____ the dress.
5. I can always take it _____ and get a refund.
6. Are you paying _____ cash or _____ credit card?
7. We've nearly sold _____ that dress. We want to clear the shop.
8. I've spent too much money _____ music and clothes lately.
9. I don't know when I can pay you _____, though.
10. We can shop _____ for fantastic bargains.

XVIII. Complete the sentences with the words / phrases below.

customers departments for has has been has had

large larger largest since until was
 London ¹ _____ many famous department stores. Harrods is probably the most famous and is the UK's ² _____ department store. Charles Henry Harrods started the business in 1834 and the first shop ³ _____ in East London. Later, the shop moved and it ⁴ _____ in West London, near Hyde Park, ⁵ _____ 1849. The original building burned down in 1883 but the Harrods family built a ⁶ _____ shop after that. The most recent building has been there ⁷ _____ over 100 years. Harrods ⁸ _____ many famous ⁹ _____ in its history, including many of the British Royal Family. It has 330 ¹⁰ _____, including the popular Food Hall.

XIX. Complete the sentences with the words below.

their the much little his
every each a both another

Lucky Numbers

Philip Fredericks and ¹ _____ wife have been doing the lottery for years, choose the same six numbers ² _____ week. Never having had ³ _____ money, they were naturally overjoyed when they discovered that ⁴ _____ numbers had come up in the UK's weekly lottery draw. Five other people had chosen the same numbers, so ⁵ _____ of the six winners was to receive an equal share of the £3 million prize. Mr Fredericks wasted ⁶ _____ time in claiming his £500,000, and the couple went out to celebrate at an expensive restaurant in their hometown of Worcester. As Mr Fredericks pulled out his wallet to pay the bill after the meal, ⁷ _____ lottery ticket fell out of his pocket onto ⁸ _____ floor. He then remembered that he accidentally bought two tickets for the draw, and ⁹ _____ tickets had the same numbers. That meant that he was in fact entitled not to ¹⁰ _____ sixth, but to a third of the prize money - £1 million. It was the first time a player had won twice in the same draw.

Reading

XX. Read the text, and choose the correct answers.

Try Before You Buy?

Shop owners around the world are getting increasingly annoyed with the latest trend of customers coming into their shops just to try things on, but not to buy. They have decided to do something to stop it.

As online shopping has become more and more popular, some shop owners have noticed that although their shops look busy, they aren't making much money. This is because customers are keen to save money by buying online but are worried about choosing the wrong size or colour. So they go to the stores to try on clothes before going home to order them from a website.

But now stores in Australia have come up with an idea to stop this. They are asking customers to pay a 'trying on' fee. Winter sportswear shops have introduced charges of up to \$50 to try on boots or other ski wear. This charge is refunded if customers come back to buy the items within seven days.

It isn't just ski wear; some bridal shops have also introduced charges. Martha Jones, owner of Wedded Bliss, a bridal shop in Melbourne, explains, 'We get a lot of people who are here not to buy dresses at all. Either they try on in-store and then shop online, or they are girls who are even getting married; they just want to see what they look like in different wedding dresses. Fitting a woman for her wedding dress is a specialist skill that we take very seriously, and we put in time and effort to make sure the dress is exactly right.' The fee has been successful: 'We've had fewer time-wasters,' explains Jones, 'which means we have been able to give our real customers an even better service.'

Would you pay to try on clothes? Do you think it is fair to charge brides to try on dresses? Let us know in the comments section below.

- Shop owners are getting upset by _____.
A. the new trends in fashion B. new shopping habits
C. the increasing price of clothes D. the behaviour of shop assistants
- Shops aren't making a lot of money because people are _____.
A. too busy to shop B. saving all their money
C. looking but not buying D. worried about buying the wrong size
- Customers in some ski wear shops _____.
A. have to pay by credit cards
B. can't try anything on
C. are charged extra for trying clothes on
D. only get refunds after seven days
- According to Martha Jones, some girls come in to Wedded Bliss to _____.
A. buy a wedding dress online
B. talk about getting married
C. look at themselves in a wedding dress
D. buy lots of wedding dresses
- Martha Jones says choosing the right dress for a bride _____.
A. is a waste of time B. can be done easily
C. is a very skilful job D. is really difficult

Progress Test 3 (Units 5-6)

Vocabulary

I. Complete the sentences with the words below. There is one word that you do not need.

challenging charge customer public team
unskilled

- We usually employ some _____ workers to pick fruit over the summer.
- Being a teacher is a _____ job, but it can be fun, too.
- Part of a manager's job is being in _____ of other people's work.
- Sam doesn't like working in a _____. He prefers working on his own.
- You have to deal with the _____ a lot if you are a flight attendant.

II. Complete the sentences with the words below. There is one word that you do not need.

astronaut air-traffic controller surgeon
beauty therapist labourer lorry driver

- I am a trained _____. I like to make people look and feel great.
- I'm a(n) _____. I work on the International Space Station.
- I'm a manual _____. I do hard physical work on building sites.
- I'm a(n) _____. I transport goods in a large vehicle.
- I'm a(n) _____. I'm responsible for making sure planes take off and land safely.

III. Match the verbs i-vi with the phrases a-f. Then complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------|--------------------------|
| i. save up | _____ | a. a loan |
| ii. spend money | _____ | b. out of a cash machine |
| iii. pay | _____ | c. in the stock market |
| iv. take money | _____ | d. on clothes |
| v. invest | _____ | e. by credit card |
| vi. ask for | _____ | f. for a game console |

1. They can't afford to buy a car so they're going to the bank to _____ a loan.
2. My uncle made a fortune by _____ in oil shares.
3. Before we have dinner, I need to go to the cash machine to _____ some money out.
4. My parents refuse to buy me a motorbike, so I'll have to _____ for one myself.
5. My brother _____ all his money on DVDs. He's got hundreds of them.
6. We bought our flights on the Internet so we _____ for them by credit card.

Grammar

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. In the future people _____ (not travel) by car. Cars cause too much pollution.
2. Look! Someone _____ (steal) our neighbour's car. Phone the police.
3. The London Marathon _____ (start) an hour ago.
4. Plants die if you _____ (not water) them regularly.
5. I want to go to the theater on Saturday. I _____ (not see) a play for years.
6. Our house was burgled while we _____ (sleep).
7. We need more light. If we read in this dark room, we _____ (damage) our eyes.

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If you don't _____ (put) on sun lotion, you _____ (get) sunburned.
2. If your brother _____ (buy) that dog, he _____ (take) it for a walk every day.
3. If he _____ (drive) to the airport, it _____ (take) him four hours.
4. I _____ (cook) dinner if I _____ (get) home first.
5. If your parents _____ (open) a restaurant in the city centre, they _____ (get) a lot of business.
6. My parents _____ (buy) a new flat next year if they _____ (save) enough money.
7. If he _____ (not pass) his exams, he _____ (not go) to university.
8. If the homework _____ (be) too difficult, I _____ (phone) you for help.
9. If you _____ (buy) the black dress, you _____ (not wear) it very often.
10. If I _____ (visit) my close friend this summer, she _____ (visit) us next year.

VI. Choose the correct words.

1. If I **see** / **saw** Nick after school tomorrow, I **will** / **would** invite him to the party.
2. I **won't** / **wouldn't** like it if I **don't have** / **didn't have** brothers or sisters.
3. Jane's sixteen and can drive in Britain. If she **lives** / **lived** in Poland, she **will** / **would** have to be eighteen.
4. If Mai **doesn't** / **didn't** call us soon, we **will** / **would** start worrying.
5. If you **can** / **could** be any superhero, which one **will** / **would** you choose to be?
6. If anyone **needs** / **needed** me, I **will** / **would** be available at once.
7. What **will** / **would** you do in the evening if you **are** / **were** never allowed to go out?
8. If you **don't** / **didn't** tell anyone we broke the window, I promise I **won't** / **wouldn't** tell either.

VII. Choose the correct answers.

1. Sorry, I'm late. I've **been** / **gone** to the library.
2. Did you get **some** / **any** replies to the advert?
3. **The** / **0** chips are bad for your health!
4. He's spoken English **for** / **since** he was six.
5. I saw **a few** / **a little** of my classmates outside the museum this morning.
6. How **much** / **many** did you pay for that?

VIII. Put commas where necessary in the following sentences.

1. The police arrested the man who stole the motorbike.
2. The competition which lasted two hours was really exciting.
3. I met the man who started the company.
4. The driver of the red car who had just passed his driving test caused the accident.

5. The hotel where a lot of film stars stay has five stars.
6. That's the car which they used in the James Bond film.
7. We live near a forest where you can see deer and wild horses.

Word Skills

IX. Complete the sentences with the below.

1. She spends a lot of time _____ (watch) sport on television.
2. We decided _____ (go) camping in the national park this year.
3. It's a beautiful day. Do you fancy _____ (go out) for a walk?
4. I expected _____ (see) you on the bus. Did you miss it?
5. Ann has got a bike. She offered _____ (take) me to school.
6. It was a gripping book. I finished _____ (read) it late last night.
7. My dad enjoyed _____ (work) on the old car.

X. Complete the sentences. Use the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs below.

talk be buy make lend pass send watch

1. My grandparents offered _____ me a computer, which was very generous of them.
2. If you suffer from claustrophobia, you can't stand _____ in small spaces.
3. He promised _____ me a text message as soon as his plane arrived.
4. Sam is very talkative. He carries on _____ even when no one is listening to him.
5. Jack is very funny. He can't help _____ jokes all the time!
6. Nam is working hard. He expects _____ all his exams in the summer.
7. I don't really fancy _____ TV this evening.
8. John is so mean! He refused _____ me £1 for a coffee!

Use of English

XI. Complete the text. Use one word only for each gap.

Everyone finds exams stressful, and this is especially true of oral exams. Imagine that you are ¹ _____ an exam and you have just ² _____ asked a question to ³ _____ you know the answer perfectly well. In the classroom, you would answer it without ⁴ _____ problem, but ⁵ _____ this precise moment, you are unable to think or speak. You can't concentrate on the question at all and the only thoughts which go through your mind are unhelpful ones like, 'It wouldn't ⁶ _____ fair if I failed this exam because I've worked ⁷ _____ hard and spent so much time studying. Why ⁸ _____ this have to happen to me?' As you look up, it seems that the examiner is staring at you in a very unfriendly way, but he or she is probably just trying to be as encouraging as ⁹ _____. You feel you have to say something so you start to speak - but when you ¹⁰ _____ your mouth, the only thing that comes out is: 'I'm sorry, I don't know.'

Reading

XII. Read the text, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

The Workplace

The workplace is changing. Gone is the traditional office and gone too are the traditional office hours. We are no longer tied to a desk from 8.00 a.m. until 5.00 p.m. with a couple of coffee breaks and an hour for lunch. Technology has revolutionised our working lives in many different ways.

One of the greatest changes that we can see happening today is related to where we do our work. The daily commute to and from the office will soon be a thing of the past for many of us. Technology allows us to work wherever we wish because of the increased ability to communicate via the Internet and send our work round the world in seconds. More and more people are taking advantage of this freedom and working from home.

One significant effect of this trend is that people are having to develop their selfdiscipline and time management skills. And perhaps the greatest danger is that the workforce will become increasingly isolated, and some people will see no one from one day

to the other. From a practical point of view, however, the way we organise our days is becoming more flexible and companies can cut office expenditure. Only time will tell whether the benefits of working from home make it worthwhile or not.

1. No one will work in offices in the future.
2. Changes are happening because of technology.
3. People meet each other face-to-face more these days.
4. We have to control our working time carefully.
5. Working from home can be lonely.

XIII. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Bids to Become Famous

A A Life for Sake

Ian Usher, a British man living in Australia, was unhappy with his life. He decided that he wanted a new start - but how? Then he had an idea. He put his whole life up for sale on the online auction site eBay. The sale included his three- bedroom house and all its contents, his car and his jet ski. It even included his job and introductions to his friends. The auction began and attracted 1.75 million visits in the first few hours. Eventually, the bids reached nearly 400,000 Australian dollars (£192,000). Mr Usher was disappointed with the price, but he accepted it. He moved out of his home, and started his new life. He used the money from his sale to achieve his 100 top ambitions - all in 100 weeks. These included swimming with sharks off the coast of Japan, riding an ostrich in South Africa, and getting a part in a Hollywood film.

B A town called Albert

In 2007, an unusual item was put up for sale on eBay: a town called Albert. The town is in Gillespie County in Texas, about 100 km away from the city of San Antonio. There's a school there, a dance hall and a bar. There are also peach and pecan orchards. In the end, a buyer from Italy paid about \$3 million for the town. We don't know why he or she wanted to purchase it. What do the people who live in Albert think of the sale? The answer is: nothing. Nobody has lived in the town for years. The main aim of the sale was to create lots of free advertising for the seller - in this case, an estate agent.

C What a bargain!

When a British 16-year-old paid £95 on eBay for a second-hand PlayStation 2 console and two games, he wasn't sure if it was a bargain. But when the goods arrived and he opened the box, the console was there but the games weren't. Instead, there was €65,400 in banknotes. The boy, who has not given his name, was amazed. He told his parents, and they gave the money to the police, who began an investigation. So far, they haven't found out who the cash belongs to or how it got into the box. So what happens to the money? That depends. If the police discover that the money came from crime, it belongs to the government. But if nobody can prove where it's from, the boy and his family can apply to keep it.

Task 1. Choose the correct answers.

1. Ian Usher wanted to sell everything so he could _____.
 A. move to Australia B. become an actor
 C. make a fresh start in life D. make new friends
2. Mr Usher thought the money he received was _____.
 A. much more than he expected B. not enough to achieve his ambitions
 C. not acceptable D. not as much as he expected
3. The town of Albert is _____.
 A. in San Antonio
 B. in Gillespie County
 C. about 100 km outside Texas
 D. about 100 km outside Gillespie County

4. The real reason for selling the town on eBay was _____.
 A. the seller wanted to be in the news
 B. nobody lived in the town
 C. the seller wanted to be an estate agent
 D. the seller wanted to move to Italy
5. When the boy opened the box, _____.
 A. he knew why it contained the money
 B. the goods weren't in it
 C. his parents took it from him
 D. some of the things he ordered were missing
6. The boy can apply to keep the money if _____.
 A. he promises not to use it for crime
 B. nobody can find out where it came from
 C. the government decides that he needs it
 D. he can find out where it came from

Task 2. Complete the missing words in the definitions with the underlined words in the text.

1. _____ are paper money.
2. A(n) _____ is a good price for something.
3. _____ are offers of money at an auction.
4. _____ means using announcements and / or pictures to make people want to buy things.
5. If something is for _____, you can buy it.
6. _____ are things that you have bought.
7. To _____ something means to buy it.

UNIT 7: Tourism

7A. Vocabulary

• Tourist attractions

I. Choose the correct words or phrases to complete the sentences.

1. He cleared his mind and went further into the vast **square** / **statue** / **cathedral**.
2. We sat in the chairs that are set out in summer around a **harbour** / **fountain** / **safari park**.
3. Trees from every continent turn King's Park into a giant **botanical garden** / **museum** / **water park**.
4. We are visiting a small **palace** / **art gallery** / **aquarium** with exotic fish around the world.
5. A group of three little islands are conveniently arranged to form a perfect natural **theme park** / **harbour** / **shopping district**.
6. Last week we went to the **water park** / **harbour** / **theme park** where we had fun in swimming pools, went down water slides and had rides that involved water.
7. A bronze **tower** / **square** / **statue** was erected in his honour.
8. They had bought a huge bam with some large land and planned to turn it into a **palace** / **fountain** / **ruins**.
9. They discovered the **botanical gardens** / **aquariums** / **ruins** of the ancient city near our town.
10. The tour guide drove us through the **square** / **harbour** / **safari park**, and we could watch wild animals moving freely from our car.

II. Match the words below with the definitions. There is one extra word.

aquarium tower harbour fountain
castle art gallery theme park shopping district
monument museum safari park

1. You can drive through this place and see wild animals.	_____
2. This is a very large strong building, built in the past as a safe place that could be easily defended against attack.	_____
3. This is a place where you can see fish and other creatures that live in water.	_____
4. You can see famous paintings here.	_____
5. This is a special building or statue that was built to remember something, for example people who died in a war.	_____
6. This is a place next to the sea that protects boats.	_____
7. This is a place where you can learn about a subject, such as history or science.	_____
8. This is a tall narrow building and if you climb to the top, you can see a long way.	_____
9. This is an area where you go if you want to buy things.	_____
10. This is a place with lots of entertainment and fun things to do.	_____

• **Describing tourist attractions**

III. Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

- I like going to castles and other _____ buildings where I can learn about the past.
 a. historic b. peaceful c. remote
- When I'm on holiday, I prefer going to places like mountainous areas with _____ scenery.
 a. touristy b. cheap c. spectacular
- I live in a really noisy city, so I like to spend my holidays in _____ places.
 a. peaceful b. busy c. spectacular
- The mist around the castle ruins looked so _____.
 a. atmospheric b. historic c. busy
- Most of the museums that I visited were amazing, but this one was quite small and not very _____.
 a. expensive b. impressive c. romantic

• **Compound nouns**

IV. Complete the sentences with the words below.

luggage passport seat
boarding window cabin

- I prefer to sit in a _____ seat on a plane so I can see the view.
- You should always wear your _____ belt when you're sitting down on a plane.
- The _____ crew are usually really helpful if you need anything on a flight.
- You can't get on a plane without a _____ pass.
- You have to go through _____ control when you land in a different country.
- My mum only takes a handbag, so she doesn't have to wait to get the suitcase from the _____ carousel.

V. Fill in each blank with the correct word to form the compound nouns either in one or two words to complete the sentences.

back wild note camp travel sun (x3)

- You can buy maps and guidebooks from _____ sites in the country areas.
- They have rubbed me all over with the lotion to protect me from _____ bum.
- I'm looking for a stylish yet practical _____ pack to carry my laptop and books in.
- If you are going to be exposed to the sun, don't forget the _____ cream.

5. A _____ agent is a person or business that arranges people's holidays and journeys.
6. More and more people are watching _____ life programmes on TV because they're interested in nature.
7. Emily was wearing huge dark _____ glasses.
8. As they searched, they wrote down in a _____ book details of all the things they found.

VI. Complete the sentences with the words below.

guide transport trap resort
park package destination

1. Viet Nam is the number one travel _____ in Southeast Asia.
2. The whole of Yellowstone National _____ in the US is actually a giant supervolcano.
3. San Francisco's cable cars are part of the city's public _____ system.
4. _____ holidays are less popular now that people can book flights and accommodation online.
5. A tour _____'s salary often isn't very high, but it's obviously a great job for those who love travel.
6. People don't think of Barcelona as a beach _____, but there are seven beaches on its coastline.
7. It's a good idea to visit some of the other pyramids in Egypt, as Giza is a bit of a tourist _____.

7B. Grammar

• Present perfect

I. Write questions in the present perfect using these words.

1. How long / you / study / at this school?

2. How long / your mum / have her mobile phone?

3. How long / the students / be / in the school library?

4. How long / you / know / Nick?

5. How long / they / live / in this town?

II. Complete the postcard using the present perfect.

Dear Nam,

It's now day 3 of our walking holiday in the national park. We ¹ _____ (be) here since Saturday. We're really tired because we ² _____ (walk) more than 100 km! We ³ _____ (not stay) at a single hotel. We ⁴ _____ (sleep) in our tent every night, so we ⁵ _____ (save) lots of money. The mountains are really beautiful - we ⁶ _____ (buy) lots of postcards to show you. The nights ⁷ _____ (be) cold, so Paul ⁸ _____ (not enjoy) it very much!

See you soon

Nick

III. Peter is on holiday in Viet Nam. Look at the things he has done. Write questions and answers using the present perfect.

1. swim in the sea ✓ 2. spend a lot of money on souvenirs □
3. try windsurfing ✓ 4. read a lot of books □
5. make a lot of new friends □ 6. go to an internet cafe ✓

1. *Has he swum in the sea? - Yes, he has.*

- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.

IV. Complete the text. Use the present perfect, affirmative or negative.

Jane Williams is getting married next month. Her parents are planning the wedding. They¹ _____ (decide) which relatives and friends they want to invite, but they² _____ (not send) the invitations. They³ _____ (speak) to the grandparents and Jane's dad⁴ _____ (find) a restaurant for the party. Jane's mum⁵ _____ (make) the cake but she⁶ _____ (not choose) the flowers yet. They⁷ _____ (not buy) Jane and her boyfriend a present yet.

V. Complete the phone dialogue with the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets and short answers.

Mai Hello, Mai speaking.

Jack Hi, Mai. It's Jack. I'm phoning from London.

Mai Hi, Jack. It's great to hear from you. So, you¹ _____ (find) your mobile!

Jack Actually, no. I² _____ (buy) a new one, but my number³ _____ (not change).

Mai Well, we⁴ _____ (not speak) for ages.⁵ _____ (you / find) somewhere to live yet?

Jack No, I⁶ _____, but I⁷ _____ (just look) at a beautiful flat near the Thames.

Mai Are you going to live there?

Jack I⁸ _____ (not decide) yet. I can't really afford it.

Mai⁹ _____ (you / start) work?

Jack Yes, I¹⁰ _____. I¹¹ _____ (give) about twenty lessons, but the school¹² _____ (not pay) me yet.

VI. Write questions with *How long ...?* and answer with *for* or *since*. Short answers are recommended.

1. My father is a teacher. He started teaching twenty years ago.

2. I live near the coast. I moved there three years ago.

3. I know Mary. We first met last Christmas.

4. I play the piano. I had my first lesson in 2019.

5. I've got a passport. I got it three years ago.

6. My uncle works in a factory. He started working there in 2001.

VII. Write questions with *How long ...?* Then write true answers with *for* or *since*.

1. you / be / in this class?

2. your English teacher / know / you?

3. you / live / in your house or flat?

4. you / study / English?

5. you / have / this book?

VIII. Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

1. I've been in the school library _____ 2 p.m.

2. Mai has known Lan _____ three years.

3. I haven't been on holiday _____ last year.

4. Have you had that bicycle _____ a long time?

5. Where have you been _____ school finished?

• *been* and *gone*

IX. Complete the sentences with *been* or *gone*.

1. Tom has _____ to Jim's for lunch. He'll be back about two.

2. 'I want to speak to Jill. Has she _____ yet?' - 'No, she's still here.'

3. 'Where's Mary?' - 'She's _____ to the supermarket.'

4. Jack has _____ to the shops. Look at all the CDs he has bought.

5. 'Are you going to the art exhibition in the City Hall?' - 'I've already _____ to it. It was fantastic.'

6. They're on holiday at the moment. They've _____ hiking in Cuc Phuong National Park.

7. We've _____ shopping. Do you like my new shoes?

8. My dad has _____ to the bank and now he has a lot of money.

9. Have you ever _____ to Ha Noi?

10. I'm sorry, he's not here. He's _____ home.

• Contrast: past simple and present perfect

X. Choose the correct answers.

1. My school football team **hasn't won** / **didn't win** a match since the start of the year.

2. I **haven't been** / **didn't go** to China. What's it like?

3. It **has rained** / **rained** three times this week.

4. I **have seen** / **saw** my first Disney film when I was four years old.

5. I feel at home in this village because we **have lived** / **lived** here for six years now.

6. I'm a big football fan, but I **have never been** / **never went** to the stadium.

7. It **hasn't rained** / **didn't rain** for a long time, so it's very hot.

8. I **have sent** / **sent** an email to Jack last week, but he hasn't replied.

XI. Complete the sentences. Use the past simple in one sentence and the present perfect in the other.

1. a Italy _____ the World Cup in 2006. (win)
b He's happy because Manchester United _____ all their matches this year. (win)
2. a 'Can you tidy your room?' - 'I _____ it this morning.' (tidy)
b 'Can you tidy your room?' - 'I _____ it.' (just / tidy)
3. a What time _____ you _____ home last night? (arrive)
b '_____ Ben _____?' - 'Yes, he's in the living room.' (arrive)
4. a Come on, let's eat. Dad _____ dinner. (cook)
b Who _____ this food? It's delicious. (cook)
5. a I _____ lots of interesting people since I arrived. (meet)
b _____ you _____ anyone interesting while you were on holiday? (meet)

XII. Complete the email. Choose the correct tense: the past simple or present perfect.

Hi Mai,

I ¹**didn't e-mail** / **haven't e-mailed** you for ages. Sorry about that! I ²**was** / **have been** really busy since my birthday.

David and I ³**stopped** / **have stopped** going out last month. Did you know that? At first, I ⁴**was** / **have been** really upset about it, but now I'm OK. In fact, I ⁵**just met** / **have just met** a really nice boy! He ⁶**asked** / **has asked** me out yesterday by text message. I ⁷**didn't reply** / **haven't replied** yet but I ⁸**decided** / **have decided** that I'm going to say 'yes'. We're going to the new cinema. ⁹**Did you ever go** / **Have you ever been** there? My brother ¹⁰**went** / **has been** there last month. He says it's great.

E-mail me soon!

Love

Susan

XIII. Complete the dialogues with the verbs given. Use the past simple or present perfect form.

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| | <i>go</i> | <i>stay</i> | <i>visit</i> |
| Phong | ¹ _____ | you _____ | to the USA? |
| Linda | Yes, I ² _____ | San Francisco last year. | |
| Phong | Where ³ _____ | you _____? | |
| Linda | At my uncle's house. | | |
| | <i>be</i> | <i>give open</i> | <i>receive say</i> |
| Phong | ⁴ _____ | you ever _____ | a present that you don't like? |
| Linda | Yes, my aunt ⁵ _____ | me a yellow sweatshirt for my birthday. | |
| Phong | What ⁶ _____ | you _____ | to her? |
| Linda | Nothing. She ⁷ _____ | there when I ⁸ _____ | it. |
| | But I ⁹ _____ | her a nice thank-you letter. | |

XIV. Some of the sentences are incorrect. Rewrite them using the correct tense.

1. I've been to Ha Noi last year.

2. She's written three emails last night.

3. Last summer we saw some beautiful lakes in Ha Noi.

4. Have you ever met anyone famous?

5. I lived in Ho Chi Minh City since 2018.

6. 'Did you buy a present yet?' - 'No, not yet.'

7. Last Christmas my parents have given me a new laptop.

8. 'Have you ever been diving?' - 'Yes, I've been diving last summer.'

XV. Complete the dialogues with the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1. A: Nick _____ (invite) me to his party yesterday. Are you going?

B: He _____ (not ask) me yet.

2. A: _____ you _____ (write) to your brother yet?

B: Yes, I _____ (email) him last night.

3. A: I _____ (never be) to Hoi An.

B: I have. I _____ (go) there two years ago. It's a very nice city.

4. A: My parents _____ (recently start) their own business.

B: Really? When _____ it _____ (open)?

5. A: _____ your sister _____ (take) her exams yet?

B: Yes. She _____ (get) her results yesterday.

• Reported speech

XVI. Complete the sentences in reported speech. Use the past simple, past continuous or past perfect.

1. 'I like pizza,' said David.

David said that he _____ pizza.

2. 'A shoplifter stole three DVDs,' said the shop assistant.

The shop assistant said that a shoplifter _____ three DVDs.

3. 'Drug dealers are selling drugs in front of my house,' the man said.

The man said that drug dealers _____ drugs in front of his house.

4. 'It's getting dark,' said Mia.

Mia said that it _____ dark.

5. 'Some vandals smashed the shop window,' she said.

She said that some vandals _____ the shop window.

6. 'Every day joyriders steal ten cars in the city,' said the police officer.

The police officer said that every day joyriders _____ ten cars in the city.

7. 'Two men robbed the bank,' the bank manager said.

The bank manager said that two men _____ the bank.

8. 'The burglar is in the police car,' said the police officer.

The police officer said that the burglar _____ in the police car.

XVII. Complete the sentences with the correct pronoun.

1. 'He never phones me,' said Linda.

- Linda said that _____ never phoned _____ .
2. 'You're late!' she said to me.
She said to _____ that _____ was late.
3. 'I'm going home,' said Mai.
Mai said that _____ was going home.
4. 'We live in the Mekong Delta,' she said.
She said that _____ lived in the Mekong Delta.
5. 'I like watching TV in my bedroom,' he said.
He said that _____ liked watching TV in _____ bedroom.

XVIII. Complete the reported speech using the past simple or past continuous. Change the pronoun if necessary.

1. 'I live near the sea,' she said.
She said that _____ .
2. 'I'm not wearing a coat,' he said.
He said that _____ .
3. 'It's very cold outside,' she said.
She said that _____ .
4. 'I'm feeling ill,' he said.
He said that _____ .
5. 'It's raining,' she said.
She said that _____ .
6. 'I don't speak Japanese,' he said.
He said that _____ .
7. 'We're playing really well,' they said.
They said that _____ .
8. 'We don't eat much red meat,' they said.
They said that _____ .

XIX. Rewrite what Jane says using reported speech.

1. 'I'm hungry.'
Jane said that _____ .
2. 'I didn't have any breakfast.'
She said _____ .
3. 'I want a banana.'
4. 'I'm going out.'
5. 'My friend is meeting me at the cinema.'
6. 'My friend's name is Tom.'
7. 'I first met him last year.'
8. 'We're going to see a fantasy film.'

XX. Rewrite the sentences in reported speech.

1. 'The young boy took my bag,' said the woman.
The woman said _____ .
2. 'We're watching the people in the house,' said the police officers.
The police officers said _____ .
3. 'I can't stand romantic films,' said Anna.

- Anna said .
4. 'I've been to the bank,' said Peter.
Peter said .
5. 'I really want to be a pilot,' said Alex.
Alex said .
6. 'I didn't see the robbery,' said the young man.
The young man said .
7. 'Laura hasn't asked me about my exam results,' said Paula.
Paula said .

XXI. Read the dialogue. Then write it as reported speech below.

- Phong** I'm looking for a detective story.
- Susan** I love detective stories. Inspector Morse is my favourite.
- Phong** I prefer Sherlock Homes. He's a more interesting character.
- Susan** I've read a Sherlock Holmes story recently. I didn't enjoy it.
- Phong** I'm not talking about the books. I'm talking about the films.
- Susan** I agree. The films are fantastic.

0. Phong said that *he was looking for a detective story.*

1. Susan said that .
2. She said that .
3. Phong said that .
4. He said that .
5. Susan said that .
6. She said that .
7. Phong said that .
8. He said that .
9. Susan agreed. She said that .

XXII. Rewrite the sentences in direct speech.

1. He said that it wasn't raining.

2. She said that last month joyriders had stolen her car.

3. He said that he was feeling ill.

4. You said that you'd had lunch.

5. She said that her son was greedy.

6. He said that he needed a holiday.

7. You said that you were going to Tom's party that evening.

8. He said that he'd seen the robbers leaving the bank.

XXIII. Rewrite the sentences in direct speech.

1. My sister said she had lost her mobile at the party.
'_____', said my sister.
2. My dad said he was too ill to go to work.
'_____', said my dad.
3. They said they were meeting at the restaurant at 8.30 p.m.
'_____', they said.
4. Mrs Jones said I was late for the lesson.
'_____', said Mrs Jones.
5. Julia said the concert hadn't started.
'_____', said Julia.
6. The interviewer said he was working for someone with a lot of experience.
'_____', said the interviewer.

XXIV. Read the reported speech. Then write the dialogue.

Jane said that she didn't like Ho Chi Minh City. She said that she was lonely. Jack said that he knew a good cafe in Ho Chi Minh City. He said that it had great food and fantastic music there. Jane said that she couldn't go to the cafe because she didn't have any friends. She said that she hated going to cafes alone. Jack said that he had a friend in Ho Chi Minh City, Mai. He said that she was really nice. Jane said that she wanted to meet Mai. Jack said that he was trying to find her phone number.

Jane I don't like ¹_____.

I'm ²_____.

Jack I know a ³_____. It has ⁴_____.

Jane I can't ⁵_____ because ⁶_____.
_____. I hate ⁷_____.

Jack I've got ⁸_____.
She ⁹_____.

Jane I ¹⁰_____ her.

Jack I ¹¹_____ number!

XXV. Order the words to make indirect questions.

1. What did you buy?
you / tell / bought? / Can / what / me / you

2. Where's your brother?
is? / Have / idea / where / you / any / idea / got / brother / your

3. Is your friend at home?
you / home? / know / Do / at / your / if / friend / is

4. Where did you lose your bag?
you / bag? / lost / idea / Have / any / you / where / got / your

5. Is she an artist?

if / she's / Do / artist? / know / you / an

6. Who vandalised this bus?

bus? / tell / who / vandalised / you / Can / me / this

XXVI. Rewrite these direct questions as indirect questions. Start the questions with: *Have you got any idea ...?* or *Do you know ...?*

1. Who stole your bag?

Have you got any idea who stole your bag?

2. Is vandalism a problem here?

3. Where's the police station?

4. Is this your friend's wallet?

5. Why is your brother angry?

6. When did you leave home?

7. Does he live near here?

8. How often do you come into town?

7C. Word Skills

• Compounds

I. Match each noun 1-10 with a noun a-j to make compound nouns. (Four of them are written as one word.)

1. basket	a. teacher
2. swimming	b. work
3. week	c. tennis
4. home	d. pool
5. sweat	e. shirt
6. shopping	f. end
7. head	g. game
8. pop	h. ball
9. computer	i. centre
10. table	j. music

II. Complete the sentences with the compound nouns from Exercise...

1. I never listen to _____ on the radio.

2. 'Is Tom watching TV?' - 'No, he's playing a _____ in his bedroom.'

3. There's a really good _____ in the town centre. You can buy almost everything there.
4. 'Where did you learn to swim?' - 'I had lessons at the _____'
5. Is the _____ of your school a man or a woman?
6. 'What are you doing at the _____?' - 'I'm going to stay with my cousin.'
7. If you're hot, take off your _____.
8. Our teacher gave us a lot of _____ last night. It took me three hours to finish it.
9. I played _____ with my sister this morning. She won 21-18.
10. I think the Chicago Bulls is the best _____ team in the USA.

III. Complete the sentences with the below.

lounge security check-in guard
control class crew pass

1. At the airport, they provide that number along with photo identification to receive a boarding _____.
2. That airliner offers a telephone _____ facility for first and economy passengers with hand baggage.
3. The man was stopped at the door by a security _____.
4. The cabin _____ on an aircraft are the people whose job is to look after the passengers.
5. She had never flown first _____ before because she couldn't afford them.
6. The mayor also started a _____ camera programme so the police can monitor the most heavily trafficked areas of the city.
7. Moments before boarding, I caught a glance of a TV set in the departure _____.
8. There were long queues of passengers because only two passport _____ booths were open.

IV. Match the words in A to the words in B to make compound nouns. Then complete the sentences.

A *air cotton export factory price*
B *companies conditioning fields tag workers*

1. This shirt hasn't got a _____. I don't know how much it is.
2. In the past, slaves worked in the _____ of the USA.
3. If you set the _____ at 18°C instead of 24°C, you'll cause less harm to the environment.
4. _____ often do quite repetitive jobs.
5. _____ have to spend a lot of money on transport.

7D. Reading

I. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Grand Canyon - Can-Do Tour

Review by Mai Nguyen

Last year, my family decided to do something different for our holiday. In the past, we had always gone to the beach, and spent our time sunbathing and relaxing.

But this time, we chose a walking vacation around the Grand Canyon. I'd never done anything like it before, so I felt very nervous before we left.

We started in Las Vegas, and a truck left us at the starting point for our first day of hiking. That first day was terrible! I was so tired, but there weren't nearly enough rest breaks. My bag was too heavy, and by lunch I was beginning to think that I never wanted to go hiking again. The first night was awful, too. I didn't sleep, and I was so cold. And in the morning we had to wash in cold water, and eat cold food. I got very bored with sandwiches.

We walked about 15 kilometres a day. That seemed like a lot at the beginning, because I'd never done any walking before, but I slowly get fitter and found it easier. The landscape

was amazing - the desert was huge and the sky was so blue. The best day of all was when we took a helicopter flight over the Grand Canyon! I took a lot of pictures while we were flying because the views were incredible. Our very knowledgeable tour guide told us some cool facts, too. Did you know the Grand Canyon is 2,377 m deep and 446 km long? That is so huge. But apparently the Yarlung Tsangpo Grand Canyon in the Himalayas is even deeper and longer.

Did I enjoy the trip? By the end, yes! It's a great way to get out and get healthy, and to see the Grand Canyon without renting a car. But I missed comfort. My second favourite day was probably our last day back in Las Vegas, when we went sightseeing and shopping, and - best of all - ate out. My hot burger tasted great!

Task 1. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. Mai's family always go on active vacations.
2. She felt excited before the trip.
3. She didn't enjoy the first day.
4. For Mai, the walking got easier during the holiday.
5. The Grand Canyon is the biggest canyon in the world.
6. Mai was happy to return to city life.

Task 2. Answer the questions.

1. Why did Mai's family decide to go to see the Grand Canyon?

2. What problem did Mai have on the first night?

3. How far did Mai travel every day?

4. What part of vacation did she enjoy the most?

5. What three things did Mai do when she was back in Las Vegas?

II. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Travelling with Friends

Going on holiday without your **folks** for the first time can be a great experience. Just be aware that they won't be at your side if it all goes wrong. A first-time holiday can be an experience you'll remember for life. So make sure you think ahead, and it won't be one you remember for all the wrong reasons. Here's DIY guide to planning a holiday with friends.

A _____

So, you're going away with friends, with nobody around to **give you grief**? That might be how it seems in theory. In reality, disagreements can often happen. Before you even leave home, be honest with each other about what you want from this holiday. Don't wait until you arrive to discover you're the only person who wants to spend lots of **chilled** nights in watching BBC World. Be honest about what you want before you leave and discuss any problems ASAP.

B _____

This might be the first time you've had lots of money to spend on yourself. But don't forget that this money is supposed to last your whole holiday. Spending it all before you get as far

as the airport departure gate isn't a good idea. Be sensible: work out how much you're going to spend each day and stick to it.

C _____

It's worth staying **switched on** about your diet. You can certainly have a break from your everyday dishes, but just remember that your body needs vitamins and minerals, not just chips and burgers. It's natural to want to relax on holiday, especially when you're parent-free, but that doesn't mean you should live like a pig. Personal hygiene still matters - and if it doesn't matter to you, it will to your friends.

D _____

You're on holiday from the stresses of the everyday world, but you're also away from your home and family. So try to **look out for** each other. And don't be selfish. A **mate** who won't make the effort should be left at home. Don't be the one who lets everyone down. Respect people's space and their needs, likes and dislikes. If you're staying in a self-catering flat, make sure you all take turns to do the cooking and washing-up. With a little care and attention, you'll all get along just fine.

E _____

Right now, you might not think you'll miss home. But you may feel differently when you're hundreds of miles away, so be sure to keep in touch by phone, SMS or email. If possible, arrange for your family to call or text you at an agreed time, to keep your costs down. But don't be afraid to pick up the phone or send a message home at any time if you're feeling **wobbly**.

Task 1. What is the author's main intention?

- A. To narrate an experience of a trip abroad with friends.
- B. To give young people advice about travelling without their parents.
- C. To warn teenagers about the dangers of travelling alone.

Task 2. Read the text again. Match the summary sentences 1-7 with paragraphs A-E.

There is one extra sentence that you do not need.

- 1. You should think about your health.
- 2. You should contact home if you feel worried.
- 3. You should learn some useful phrases.
- 4. You should all agree on the type of holiday you want.
- 5. You should be careful with your money.
- 6. You should take care of one another.

Task 3. Match the bold colloquial words in the text with the definitions below.

- 1. relaxing
- 2. friend
- 3. keep somebody safe, take care of somebody
- 4. parents
- 5. not sure, worried
- 6. caused problems or worries
- 7. aware of, thinking about

III. Read the article, and do the tasks that follow.

My Top Travel Tips

Sandy Graves is an experienced travel writer who regularly travels all over the world. Here she shares some of her top tips.

- 1 When you start packing, leave your suitcase open somewhere. As you think of something you need to take, pack it. Don't leave it until later or you might forget. Make photocopies of all your important documents and put them in your suitcase, too. If you lose your passport, having a copy will make it easier to get a new one. Pack earplugs. They're great for long flights and noisy hostels, when you really need to sleep.

- 2 While you're travelling, be patient. Everybody wants to leave on time, but it doesn't always happen. Buses can be late, you can have problems with your documents or your card might not work in the ATM. Don't worry, there's always a way to get there. Smile and enjoy it - you won't have another chance to!
- 3 If you want more than just a holiday, try volunteering, spending some time learning new skills and meeting new people. You can travel anywhere in the world to do all kinds of different jobs, from building in Tanzania to looking after elephants in Thailand. Just think what you could do.
- 4 Do your best to try everything around you. Try the local food, by the terrible, cheap souvenirs (they won't feel terrible when you're back home) and take lots of photos. And talk to local people - you can get so much more out of your trip if you do. Keep an open mind, and don't criticise the local culture. You might see or experience things which seem strange to you, but are normal there.

Task 1. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

1. Try to pack things at the same time as you think of them.
2. It's a good idea to take earplugs for when you want to go swimming.
3. It's best not to worry when you have problems.
4. There aren't many opportunities to do anything different when you travel.
5. Don't buy souvenirs if they're not good.
6. Try to accept things which seem strange to you.

Task 2. Find words in the article that match these meanings.

1. things you put in your ears to keep out noise (paragraph 1):
2. places where you can eat and sleep cheaply for a short time (paragraph 1):
3. able to wait calmly (paragraph 2):
4. a machine where you can get money from your bank (paragraph 2):
5. abilities; things you can do (paragraph 3):
6. from the place where you are (paragraph 4):

IV. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

The Tourist Trap

You've bought the guidebook, planned your itinerary and you're ready to go. You arrive, you go sightseeing, you drag yourself round museums and admire famous buildings, and you head home. What a great holiday! Then later you look at the photos and wonder why there are so many of buildings and views. Is it because the guidebook told you to go and look at those things?

It seems that nowadays we spend a lot of time on holiday doing what the guidebooks tell us to do rather than doing what we want, for example sitting in a cafe doing a bit of people watching. So, why do we do it? The answer dates back more than 300 years when upper-class European men took their servants and a tour tutor and set off on a cultural and classical Grand Tour of Europe, and, in particular, Italy.

Later, in the 19th century, the first guidebooks were produced by a company that still exists called Baedeker, and they followed the Grand Tour principle of listing churches. Museums, works of art and ancient palaces that were a 'must see' for every tourist. Travel guidebooks today still follow a similar format with a few concessions - adjustments made in response to a demand - to modern life, like sections on the coolest beaches and the trendiest nightclubs, but the rest of the book is still filled with the same sights that tourists in the 19th century would have seen.

So, what can you do to avoid the tourist trap and turn your holiday into a more memorable experience? Try some of these tips and see how far you get.

- Don't waste your time looking at ancient monuments; try and find the locals and learn about their culture.

- Have a ‘staycation’; stay at home and try to get to know your neighbours better. More and more cities have a good selection of the world’s cultures within them. There’s a whole world on your own doorstep if you take the time to look.
- Nomadic tribes have always stopped when and where they felt like it. This is still a great option today, and avoids queues at airport check-in desks. Just pack your tent and go camping! Stop in a field (make sure you ask permission first), or at the foot of a mountain or on a cliff with incredible views over the sea. Pitch your tent, sit under the stars and admire the natural beauty around you.
- You can follow your nose and see what smells in the air. Maybe you’ll end up eating local food caught and cooked right there in front of you. If you’re in the countryside, follow the sounds and create your own tourist trail, letting your senses be your guide. So, come on! Show your sense of adventure, and don’t get caught in the tourist trap.

Task 1. Which sentence best summarizes the text?

- A. People need to change their attitudes to holidays — what they do and where they go.
- B. Guidebooks have changed significantly over the years and now offer better information for the modern traveler.
- C. In the past, tourists did things that were similar to the things we do today.
- D. The best thing about holidays is looking at your photos when you get back.

Task 2. Choose the correct answers.

- The text suggests that often people go on holiday and _____.
 A. spend a lot of time visiting the places in guidebooks and missing the experience
 B. spend a lot of time looking at the buildings and admiring views
 C. don’t see enough museums
- According to the text, a lot of people would prefer to _____ when they are on holiday.
 A. relax in a cafe than look at ancient monuments
 B. read the guidebook in a cafe before deciding what to see
 C. go and see the sights their guidebook recommends rather than sit in a cafe
- Baedeker is _____.
 A. a company that supplies tour guides
 B. the company that invented the Grand Tour
 C. a publishing company
- According to the text, the guidebooks tourists use today are _____.
 A. exactly the same as the one tourists use in the 19th century
 B. very similar to the guidebooks used in the 19th century
 C. just lists of buildings that tourists should visit
- According to the writer, Nomads _____.
 A. offer a useful example of how to travel
 B. pitch their tents on mountains and cliffs
 C. ask first if they can camp in fields
- The text suggests that by following the advice it gives, people are more likely to _____.
 A. stay at home instead of going out
 B. have a holiday that they will remember better
 C. see more places on holiday

V. Read the holiday adverts. Match the sentences 1-8 with the holiday adverts A-E.

Write A, B, C, D and E in each blank. Each letter can be used more than once.

- A Relax on a remote tropical island! Come to the Maldives in the Indian Ocean. Enjoy windsurfing on the crystal-clear water. Eat under the palm trees while looking at the beautiful blue ocean. Travel in January or February for under £1,000 per person.

- B** Try a summer holiday in the mountains. If you enjoy walking, how about trekking in the French Alps? A guided walking holiday is £595 per person per week for groups of four, stopping at a different typical French hostel every night. If you don't need a guide, it's £495.
- C** Why not book a typical family beach holiday this summer? Book bed and breakfast accommodation with a sea view in Sunnyside Hotel, Hope Cove, Devon. Family room costs £120 a night. Hope Cove is a fishing village with cafes, shops and two beautiful sandy beaches. The kids will love it.
- D** Take a short holiday in March in beautiful County Kerry in Ireland. Three nights in a double room in the luxury Killamey Hotel on Muckross Lake costs just £700, including dinner. And if the weather is bad, you can relax in the hotel's indoor swimming pool and sauna. Come on - treat yourself.
- E** Come to The House, a multi-activity centre for 15-17 year-olds on the Norfolk coast. You can take part in activities like rock climbing and paragliding, and there are dance lessons with parties and music in the evenings. Learn something new and have fun!
1. This place offers an alternative for rainy days.
 2. This is a holiday for people of similar ages.
 3. People with children will enjoy this place.
 4. People who don't like staying in one place will like this holiday.
 5. This is a holiday for people who like exotic surroundings.
 6. This place offers a wide range of activities for teenagers.
 7. This deal is for people who don't have time for a long holiday.
 8. On this holiday, you will need to pay for dinner in a restaurant.

VI. Read the text, and choose the correct answers.

Lima, Peru

As large numbers of European tourists begin to tire of the delights of inexpensive sun and sand on the coasts of their own continent, travel agents are putting together trips to more and more exotic destinations which don't normally come up in the post-Christmas 'where are we going this year?' discussion. One city which is beginning to appear in more and more brochures is Lima, the capital of Peru. From surfing on the Pacific beaches of Punta Hermosa to exploring history in the National Museum, Lima has something to appeal to everyone.

Today's Lima is a huge city of almost 8 million people. The population is very mixed, consisting of native South Americans, *mestizos* (people of mixed native and European origins) and Europeans, particularly Spanish. The *mestizos* have long been the largest group, but the make-up of the city has changed over time. Large numbers of native people have moved out of the countryside and into Lima. Although many of them have managed to adapt to city life and have become wealthier than they were in the countryside, many live in areas known as *pueblos juvenes* (young towns), which don't have modern facilities yet.

It was the Spanish who conquered this area in the sixteenth century, and despite the modern development which took place during the twentieth century, their influence can still be seen in some historical buildings. Among the skyscrapers and luxury hotels, attractions such as Lima Cathedral stand out. In spite of the earthquakes which have forced rebuilding and which still shake the area from time to time, the cathedral is a beautiful reminder of the history of the city.

The climate makes it an attractive place to visit at any time of the year. Visitors should bear in mind that it is south of the equator, so the seasons are reversed compared to Europe. The geography of area, including hills, valleys and coastal areas, means that conditions can vary considerably from one district to the next. The morning fog that hangs over the coast of the Surco area in winter, for example, could appear on the same day the next district, La Molina, enjoys warm sunny weather. Unusually for such a large city, there is almost no

rainfall, although summer showers occasionally come down from the mountains in the evening.

One of the things that strikes any visitors is the cuisine. The mixed population means that many influences are combined, from native and Spanish dishes to more recent tastes, such as Chinese and other Asian food. Lima's seafood restaurants are quickly gaining an international reputation and provide the perfect spot from which to watch the Lima nightlife pass by.

Getting around Lima can present challenges, even to experienced travellers, but a little patience (and a little Spanish) goes a long way. Buses and taxis are generally cheap. The rail service, the Lima Metro, provides a limited service, since the planned system is still in the process of being completed.

1. More people are considering going to Lima on holiday because _____.
 A. they can avoid crowds of tourists there
 B. it is cheaper than holidaying in Europe
 C. you can do things there you can't do in Europe
 D. they are bored with resorts closer to home
2. Most people in Lima are _____.
 A. *mestizos* B. of Spanish origin
 C. native South Americans D. of European origin
3. The population of Lima has grown due to _____.
 A. an increase in the number of houses available
 B. the number of Spanish people moving there
 C. problems faced by people in areas outside the city
 D. an increase in the number of *mestizos*
4. Lima Cathedral is an example of _____.
 A. modern architecture in Peru
 B. modern development spoiling Lima
 C. a building that looks Spanish
 D. native South American architecture
5. Which of the following are you unlikely to see in Lima?
 A. fog in Surco in July
 B. light rain in the evening in December
 C. sunny winter days in La Molina
 D. heavy rain in Surco
6. The food in the restaurants in Lima is _____.
 A. simple and traditional B. becoming more famous
 C. just like Spanish food D. unpopular with tourists
7. What does the writer suggest might help in travelling around Lima?
 A. knowing the local language
 B. only taking short trips
 C. asking people to be patient with you
 D. planning a route which avoids the traffic
8. The general impression of Lima the writer wants to give is of a city _____.
 A. where people don't live well
 B. with a lot of history which has developed rapidly
 C. where different groups of people struggle against each other
 D. that travellers will find difficult and frustrating

VII. Read the text, and choose the sentences A-J to fit the gaps 1-7. There are three extra sentences that you do not need to use.

- A. This is a way for people to compensate for the amount of carbon dioxide they have produced by flying abroad.
- B. His income is based on an honesty system where travel companies declare how much money they have made by appearing on his website.
- C. However, he proved everyone wrong and ResponsibleTravel.com now offers eco-tourism more than 4,000 holiday experiences.
- D. The company doesn't only support good practice in alternative tourism.
- E. However, he makes sure that each trip is advantageous for local communities.
- F. The choice is enormous.
- G. However, ResponsibleTravel.com has not only succeeded financially.
- H. Not only that, but through their own enjoyment, they have helped a local community and the environment.
- I. After two years in existence, the team developed a new initiative.
- J. Alternatively, you can travel to a remote island in the South Pacific.

Eco-tourism at Its Best

This month marks the tenth anniversary of ResponsibleTravel.com, an ethical travel website launched by entrepreneur Justin Francis. When he started the site, Justin was told by many experts that his idea wouldn't work, because people would not be interested in an ethical company. ¹ _____

These holidays are aimed at people who want a really authentic experience instead of just ticking off a list of things to see. ² _____ If you enjoy bird-watching, you can stay in a bed and breakfast in the South of England that was built with local materials and provides a healthy breakfast made from local products. ³ _____ Here, rainwater is recycled and travelers have the chance to meet local people.

It is longer journeys that are the most problematic for ethical travel companies because of the pollution caused by the flights. At first, ResponsibleTravel.com supported the idea of carbon footprint offsets. ⁴ _____ However, two years ago, Justin stopped offering carbon offset because he could see that the system was corrupt.

ResponsibleTravel.com is ethical in every way. Right from the start, only companies which showed real interest in the environment were invited to appear in Justin's website. And he doesn't charge them for advertising on his site.

⁵ _____ The fact that Justin's business has just reached its first \$100 million in sales shows that this system works.

⁶ _____ Customers are asked to rate their holiday from 1 to 5, where 1 is disappointing and 5 is the best holiday ever. The average mark is 4.5, which shows that most travelers are extremely satisfied with their experience. ⁷ _____ It's a winning combination.

7E. Speaking

• Everyday English

I. Choose the correct response.

1. A: Shall we go to Dam Sen Water Park this weekend?	B: a/ There aren't many activities. b/ OK. The weather's very hot.
2. A: We should book the hotel in advance.	B: a/ It's a good idea in high season. b/ Sorry, what does it mean?
3. A: What about a trip to Hoi An this summer?	B: a/ Good. I'm not excited about that. b/ That sounds like a great idea.
4. A: Do you fancy going to an Indian restaurant this evening?	B: a/ Great. Let's cook some curry. b/ Sorry, I don't like spicy food.
5. A: That's a really good plan.	B: a/ I'm glad you like it. b/ Either plan is fine by me.

6. A: We can book the holiday by phone.	B: a/ The receptionist is very helpful. b/ And we can pay by credit card.
7. A: Have you ever lost anything while travelling?	B: a/ Luckily, our flight was on time. b/ Luckily, it's never happened.
8. A: It would be nice to go to the beach this summer for our holiday.	B: a/ Great. Local people are friendly. b/ I think Nha Trang will be nice.
9. A: What about a foreign holiday this year, Mai?	B: a/ I don't think it's a good idea. b/ OK. We'll go to Sa Pa.
10. A: Let's go round the city for a while.	B: a/ Bicycles are popular in the city. b/ We should go by bike.

• **Planning a holiday**

II. Work in pairs. Imagine you're introducing a holiday in Viet Nam to a foreign student. Use the questions and the prompts given to prepare a dialogue, and practice it with your partner.

- Where are you going to?
- How long are you planning to stay?
- Where are you going to stay?
- What is the weather like?
- What are you planning to do there: sightseeing, day trips, cultural tours?

A. Ho Chi Minh City - a week

weather: nice, sunny, hot in the afternoon

have a city tour: The Independence Palace, Central Post Office, Saigon Notre Dame Cathedral, and Bach Dang Wharf

shows: The Saigon Opera House - Ao dai Show

activities:

- take a motorbike tour around the city centre or to Cu Chi Tunnel
- take Saigon River Dinner Cruise: enjoy the Vietnamese cuisine and the night views over the Saigon River

go around:

- go to the Mekong Delta; My Tho - the gateway to the Mekong Delta
- Vinh Long: visit some small islets for exploration
- Can Tho at the heart of the Mekong Delta, visit Cai Rang Floating Market

B. Sapa for three days

travel: by train or by coach from Ha Noi - 400 km from Ha Noi

weather: cool, cloudy, cold at night

accommodation: stay at a three-star hotel or homestay

activities:

- go hiking through mountainous trails, enjoy the beauty of the rice terraces
- spend time with an ethnic village and enjoy homestay
- see the process of making Hmong renowned indigo fabric
- visit Ham Rong Mountain (Dragon Jaw Mountain), visit a garden with many kinds of forest orchids and roses, and enjoy the nice view of Sapa
- take the cable to Mount Fansipan
- enjoy traditional dishes of the ethnic groups

A Where are you going to in Viet Nam?

B I'm going to _____.

A How long are you planning to stay?

B I'm going to stay for _____. What is the weather like?

- A It's _____. What are you planning to do here?
- B I'll have _____.
- A Will you _____? You can _____.
- B It sounds _____. I'll get there. Can you recommend some more activities? I'll have _____ there.
- A During the daytime, you can _____. In the evening, you can _____.
- B Perfect. Can you travel far from _____?
- A You can _____.
- B I expected it's very exciting to travel to different regions in Viet Nam.

7F. Writing

• A holiday blog

I. Read the blog entries by Anna and Tom. Answer the questions about them.

5.22 p.m @Anna321

There are some fantastic beaches here in Nha Trang, but the weather this week is terrible. That's really unlucky because it's usually quite good at this time of year. Yesterday, we stayed in the hotel all day and played cards. How boring! Dad lost the game and went to bed early. He was in bad mood all day today. Tomorrow, we're visiting a huge water park, so it doesn't matter if it's raining. We're flying home on Saturday. Great!

7.14 p.m @Tom_London

We're having a great time here in the Lake District - hot, sunny weather and fantastic scenery. Yesterday, we went for a long bike ride. When we got back, we went swimming in the lake. Joe screamed when he jumped in because the water was freezing. Tomorrow, we're going on a boat trip and then visiting a castle. This holiday is going too fast - I'll be home next week. What a shame!

1. Where is she/ he?

2. What is the weather like?

3. What did she/ he do yesterday?

4. What are her / his plans for tomorrow?

5. When is she/ he coming home?

II. Read the notes, and then complete the email. Use one word in each gap.

Why I went on the trip
Who with
Where
How long
The best place

1 June: Summer holiday starts. It's really boring.
15 June: I met Nam and he told me about having a hiking trip in Cat Tien National Park. I thought that I needed more adventure and optimism in my life too.

My feelings about the trip	Tam, my brother Cat Tien National Park, Dong Nai Province a couple of days Crocodile Swamp Fantastic trip. I'm quite tired now, but I'll never regret. I saw so many brilliant places.
-----------------------------------	--

Hi Nick,

Sorry I haven't emailed you for ages but I've been away. Do you remember that at the beginning of the summer holiday I was really ¹ _____ ?

Well, everything changed when I saw my old friend Nam in town about a month ago. He had just come back from a ² _____ trip in Cat Tien National Park. Chatting to him made me realise that I should be more adventurous and optimistic about ³ _____ in general.

I talked to my older ⁴ _____ Tam and we decided to travel by coach to that national park and ⁵ _____ for three days. We walked through the forest, including the ⁶ _____ Swamp, an interesting place in the middle of the national park. I'll show you my photos of it. I don't ⁷ _____ travelling at all. If I hadn't done that trip, I wouldn't have ⁸ _____ so many wonderful places.

Let's meet up next week.

Phong

III. You are on holiday with your family to Oxford, London. Write a blog post, including information about:

- when you arrived there
- the weather
- some activities you have done
- something you plan to do in the next few days

You can use the prompts below or invent your own.

1. we / arrive / Oxford / three days ago

2. weather / nice / sunny / morning / cloudy / afternoon

3. Saturday morning / take a bus tour / some friends / they / really eager / show us / the city

4. the afternoon / we walk / around the city / go / a museum

5. Sunday morning / we / come / some typical English villages around here / Swinbrook and Burford

6. there / not much to do there / but / they / nice places / I / take / some photos

7. tomorrow / we / visit / the university / campus

8. we / have a day / a student there / expect / it / very interesting

REVIEW UNIT 7

Vocabulary

I. Match the words below with the definitions.

fountain *temple* *opera house* *water park*
statue *ruins* *botanical gardens* *cathedral*

1. This is a place where plants and trees are grown for scientific study.	_____
2. You can find this type of water feature in parks or gardens.	_____
3. It is a very large church which is the most important in a Roman Catholic area.	_____
4. These are the broken parts of a building or an old town.	_____
5. This is a good place to go if you enjoy a particular kind of music.	_____
6. This is a religious building. There are a lot of these buildings in Vietnamese villages.	_____
7. This is a place where you can get wet and have fun.	_____
8. This is a piece of art, often made of stone or metal and found in a public place.	_____

II. Match the sentence halves.

1. We went on a guided
2. They saw a lot of tourist attractions, including
3. There were a lot of
4. I always wanted to be a tour
5. I really enjoyed the boat trip
6. The best thing about Phu Quoc Island is the scenery, which
7. Our boat took us under a
 - a. the History Museum and the National Art Gallery.
 - b. guide because I love showing people my city.
 - c. tour around the churches of Rome.
 - d. includes mountains, beaches and forests.
 - e. waterfall, which was fifty metres high.
 - f. down the Mekong River.
 - g. tourists in our hotel.

Grammar

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I _____ (not hear) from Tom since his family moved to London.
2. I _____ (be) at this school since I was ten years old.
3. _____ you _____ (see) Mai and Lan at the cinema last night?
4. How long _____ you _____ (know) Nick?
5. We _____ (watch) Manchester City play football last weekend. They won!
6. We went to Mai's for dinner last night. She _____ (cook) us a great meal.
7. He _____ (not be) to the gym for six months. He's getting fat.
8. How long _____ she _____ (be) ill?
9. What _____ you _____ (buy) David for his birthday last month?
10. _____ you _____ (take) any good photos recently?

IV. Complete the dialogue. Use the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

Mai ¹ _____ you _____ (enjoy) Jane's party?

Nick Yes, I _____ (meet) a really nice boy. He _____ (give) me his phone number.

Mai 4 _____ you _____ (call) him yet?

Nick No, but I 5 _____ (text) him last night. We're going to see the new film this evening. 6 _____ you _____ (see) it?

Mai No, but I want to.

V. Complete the dialogue. Use the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

Jane I 1 _____ (be) in New York last week.

Nick Really? 2 _____ you _____ (have) a good time?

Jane Yes, I 3 _____ (love) it. 4 _____ you _____ (go) there?

Nick No, I haven't. I 5 _____ (visit) some friends in San Francisco a few years ago, but I 6 _____ (not go) to the USA since then. What 7 _____ you _____ (do) in New York?

Jane I 8 _____ (see) a show on Broadway, and I 9 _____ (buy) lots of souvenirs.

Nick Where 10 _____ you _____ (stay)?

Jane At a hotel in Manhattan. I 11 _____ (forget) its name.

Nick 12 _____ it _____ (cost) a lot to stay there?

Jane No, it was free. I 13 _____ (win) the holiday in a competition.

Nick You're lucky. I 14 _____ (never win) anything!

VI. Rewrite the quotations in reported speech. Change the pronouns if necessary.

1. 'I want to catch the thief,' the policeman said.

2. 'She stole a DVD from the music shop,' he said.

3. 'The police arrested a drug dealer,' he said.

4. 'I go joyriding at weekends,' he said.

5. 'The police are looking for the bank robbers,' she said.

6. 'Jake is a drug dealer,' said David.

7. 'A boy in my class vandalised a phone box,' my sister said.

8. 'We are questioning two teenagers about the burglary,' the policeman said.

VII. Change the reported speech to direct speech.

1. He said he couldn't hear me.

2. She said that she had wanted to go to bed.

3. He said that he had bought a DVD.

4. She said that she couldn't swim.

5. He said that he hadn't slept well.

6. They said that they hadn't read the newspaper.

7. She said that drug dealers were criminals.

8. He said that he wasn't wearing a coat.

VIII. Underline the reported speech in the text. Change it to direct speech. There are six sentences.

An old lady had spent the morning with a friend at a shopping centre in Los Angeles. When they returned to the car, they found four men sitting in it. The old lady was very angry and said to the men that they were sitting in her car. She said that she wanted them to get out. When the men refused, she took a gun out of her bag, and the terrified men ran away.

Then she and her friend got into the car but she couldn't start the car. She said that it was the wrong key and that it didn't fit. Then she noticed an identical car nearby. She said to her friend that this wasn't her car. They went to the police station and said to the police officer that they had accidentally stolen a car. The police officer laughed and pointed to four frightened men. He said that they had arrived at the police station a few minutes ago and had reported the theft of the car by two dangerous old ladies.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.

Word Skills

IX. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. As the ball went in at the last minute of the game, the referee blew his whistle for **half** / **full** / **first** time.
2. Clients booking **half** / **full** / **first** board are served their evening meal at the hotel.
3. There is a full entertainment programme during the **low** / **high** / **full** season and the hotel has a restaurant with frequent live music.
4. With **electric** / **first** / **online** banking, consumers can pay credit cards, bills and check their bank accounts using their PC, laptop or smartphone.
5. The long flight, in the confined space of **business** / **first** / **economy** class, did little to help his backache.

6. You can tell it's **low** / **high** / **single** season: only two tour buses dropping off visitors at the famous tourist attractions.

7. She needs two **single** / **double** / **half** rooms for four guests.

8. After a period of **part-time** / **full-time** childcare, many women return to paid employment on a **part-time** / **full-time** basis so that they can take good care of their small children.

Use of English

X. Complete the text. Choose the correct options A, B, C or D.

Venice, ¹ _____ the northeast of Italy, is ² _____ city with a difference - it's all built on water. There aren't ³ _____ roads on the islands, only narrow streets that you can walk around. There are hundreds of small ⁴ _____ too, so that you can walk ⁵ _____ the canals from one street to another. There are ⁶ _____ shops where you can buy souvenirs and a lot of museums to ⁷ _____ too. Or you can go on a ⁸ _____ trip on one of the water buses or famous gondolas. One of the best times to go is for the 'Carnival of Venice' in February or March every year. The city gets really ⁹ _____ with tourists but it's a very ¹⁰ _____ experience.

1. A. at B. in C. on D. to
2. A. a B. an C. the D. there
3. A. any B. few C. much D. some
4. A. bridges B. cafes C. parks D. roundabout
5. A. into B. over C. past D. through
6. A. any B. a little C. many D. much
7. A. go B. sell C. take D. visit
8. A. boat B. shopping C. traffic D. walking
9. A. crowded B. empty C. outdoors D. relaxing
10. A. stressful B. scary C. enjoyable D. sunny

XI. Read the text, and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

British Holidaymakers

The traditional British holiday at home is not dead. In fact, it could be making a comeback. Because of worries about travelling abroad, many British people have decided to investigate ¹ _____ a lot closer to home. Popular ² _____ such as Brighton in the south and Scarborough or Blackpool in the north have never really lost their ³ _____. However, some seaside towns, which until recently have struggled, are attracting more holidaymakers.

Once they get there, holidaymakers need to be able to get around. While the car is still preferred, the majority of tourists will try at least one other ⁴ _____ of transport during their holiday - trains, for instance. Although few people would choose to start their two-week break by taking the ⁵ _____ train, a large number of them will enjoy the luxury of a restored wooden carriage on one of the many historical ⁶ _____ in operation around the country. And for those who do make it to the sea, many are tempted by a ⁷ _____ ride to nearby islands or a short ⁸ _____ on a pleasure boat. We may not be tempted by the prospect of a three-week ⁹ _____ to exotic and ¹⁰ _____ countries, but our love of the sea is clearly not lost.

1. A. reports B. arrivals C. cultures D. resorts
2. A. destinations B. directions C. venues D. excursions
3. A. popularity B. fame C. growth D. inhabitants
4. A. way B. method C. means D. sort
5. A. direct B. express C. rapid D. delayed
6. A. platforms B. runways C. rails D. railways
7. A. transport B. ferry C. sail D. ship
8. A. run B. package C. cruise D. ticket

9. A. voyage B. sail C. flight D. travel
10. A. distant B. away C. further D. long

XII. Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

If you are someone who sometimes feels stressed and exhausted by the noise and ¹ _____ (PRESS) of modern life, you might possibly enjoy ² _____ (HIKE). It allows you to experience some stunning ³ _____ (SCENE) and enjoy some wonderful peace and quiet. It's also perfect for people who are sensitive to the uniqueness of our wild places and the need to protect them because you really appreciate nature when you are walking right through it. It is also a form of ⁴ _____ (TOUR) that is eco-friendly because it causes very little ⁵ _____ (POLLUTE) or damage. All you need is a good pair of ⁶ _____ (WALK) boots, the right clothing, and a full load of sack. You can go for a day or a couple of weeks if you stay in hotels or take a tent.

Depending on your route, you can walk for miles without seeing ⁷ _____ (OTHER) person, or you can pass through ⁸ _____ (BEAUTY) villages and visit sites like castles or churches. Walking holidays are good for your body and your soul!

Reading

X. Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

Golden Hills Holiday Camp

A _____ Golden Hills is a modern, well-equipped holiday camp on the edge of the Yorkshire Dales in the north of England. It's a perfect base for exploring the beautiful scenery of the Dales and for visiting nearby places like Leeds and Harrogate.

B _____ The camp has excellent sports facilities. There is an indoor swimming pool and an outdoor pool (May - September), as well as a gym with regular aerobics classes. And for guests who are looking for a physical challenge, we can help organise activities like rock-climbing and kayaking.

C _____ We provide high-quality entertainment five nights a week, all year round. Every Friday and Saturday night there is a two-hour show from one of the best singers or comedians in the area. On Mondays and Wednesdays, it's karaoke. And Thursday night is quiz night!

D _____ You can buy food and other necessities at the small supermarket next to the reception. If you don't fancy cooking, snacks are available all day at the bar, and during the summer months, there is a barbecue every Friday and Saturday evening. Several take-away restaurants in the area will deliver to the camp - ask for details at reception.

E _____ We have twenty full-time members of the staff, including a general manager and a deputy manager. They are hard-working, patient and polite, and are happy to deal with questions or problems at any time.

Task 1. What kind of text is it?

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| A. a magazine article | B. a publicity leaflet |
| C. an informal letter | D. a newspaper report |

Task 2. Read the text again. Match paragraphs A-E with headings 1-6. There is one heading that you do not need.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Great entertainment | 4. Comfortable accommodation |
| 2. An ideal location | 5. Keeping fit |
| 3. Food and drink | 6. Our team |